

Index

NOTE. Locators in italics refer to the Figures.

- Aachen 281
 Abān ibn Saʿīd ibn al-ʿĀṣ 416
 Abarishtjān, *yazdānfādḥār* of 463
 Abarwīz, Damāwand aristocrat 480
 Abarwīz, *marzbān* of Sīstān 453
 ʿAbbād ibn ʿAbd ibn al-Julandā 431–2
 ʿAbbād al-Ruʿaynī 418
 ʿAbbādān 324
 al-ʿAbbās, uncle of the Prophet 167, 188, 206, 270
 al-ʿAbbās ibn Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn 560
 al-ʿAbbās ibn Bukhāra Khuda 296
 al-ʿAbbās ibn Ḥasan 349
 al-ʿAbbās ibn al-Maʿmūn 290, 291
 ʿAbbās ibn al-Walīd I 248
 ʿAbbāsīd period 684–5
 ʿAbbāsīd revolution xxiv, 261–5, 469–71, 550, 645; *daʿwa* (clandestine phase) 261–3, 266, 302, 464; *dawla* (public uprising) xxiv, 206, 255, 261–5, 527
 early caliphate (763–861) 269–304; *see also individual caliphs*
 middle caliphate (861–945) 305–59, 528–35; ninth-century dynastic states 313–22; ‘revolt of Islam’ 322–32; ʿAbbāsīd restoration 332–9; tenth-century regional powers 339–48; end of independent ʿAbbāsīd caliphate xxv, 348–56
 late caliphate (945–1050) II, 360–93, 535–40, 694–5; Sunnī–Shīʿite divide 387–93; *see also successor states*
 genealogies 188, 270
 see also individual caliphs, and individual topics throughout index
 al-ʿAbbāsiyya (palatine complex near Qayrawān) 604–5
 ʿAbd (or ʿAbbād) ibn al-Julandā 431
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn ʿAbd al-Madān 419
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn ʿAbd al-Malik 548
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Abī Sarḥ 583
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn ʿAlī xxiv, 264, 265, 528–9 and al-Manṣūr 266–7, 269, 528–9
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn ʿĀmir 167n, 453, 454, 500
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn ʿĀmir ibn Kurayz Pl. 16.7
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Bayhas 286, 287
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Marwān II 260
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Muʿāwiya 260–1, 265, 470
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn al-Mubārak 278
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Muḥammad ibn ʿAbd al-Raḥmān, Umayyad ruler of al-Andalus 597, 612
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn al-Muʿtazz *see* Ibn al-Muʿtazz; caliph
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Saʿd ibn Abī Sarḥ 547
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Ṭāhir 287, 491, 492–3 in Egypt 492, 553 Māzyār and 482–3
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Ubayy ibn Salūl al-Khazrajī, king of Yathrib 169–70
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn Yaḥyā al-Kindī (Ṭālib al-Ḥaqq) 260, 407, 418–19
 ʿAbd Allāh ibn al-Zubayr *see* Ibn al-Zubayr
 ʿAbd Allāh al-Akbar (ʿAbd Allāh the Elder) 327 descendants 327, 328, 329

Index

- ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī (Sa‘īd ibn al-Ḥusayn, ‘Ubayd Allāh), Fāṭimid caliph 265, 562
 path to power 329–31, 337, 338, 536, 563, 614–15
 proclamation as caliph xxv, 330, 613, 615
 reign 340, 341, 563, 567
- ‘Abd al-‘Azīz ibn Marwān I 213, 227, 548
- ‘Abd al-‘Azīz ibn Mūsā ibn Nuṣayr 232
- ‘Abd al-Jabbār ibn ‘Abd al-Raḥmān al-Azdī 273, 473
- ‘Abd al-Jabbār ibn Khaṭṭāb 586–7
- ‘Abd al-Majīd al-Ḥafīz 429
- ‘Abd al-Malik ibn ‘Aṭiyya 419
- ‘Abd al-Malik ibn Marwān, caliph xxiii, 213, 214–15, 217–21
 accession and establishment of power 216, 217, 519
 building 210–11, 520–1, 666; Dome of the Rock 221, 520–1, 655
 centralisation 210–11, 220
 coinage 208, 220, 589, 655, 657, Pl. 16.11
 and Khārījites 253, 519
 military campaigns 218, 432, 519, 583–4
 palaces 210, 666
 and provinces: Sīstān 485–6; Yemen 417
 religious beliefs and policies 175, 221, 525, 655;
 and Christianity 520–1, 522
 succession disputes after death 227
 taxation 208, 519, 520
 weights and measures reform 208, 220
- ‘Abd al-Malik ibn Nūh, Sāmānid ruler 504
- ‘Abd al-Malik ibn Qaṭan 591–2
- ‘Abd al-Malik ibn Ṣāliḥ 529
- ‘Abd al-Malik al-Muzaffar 621
- ‘Abd al-Qays tribe 164, 439, 446, 447
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān I ibn Mu‘āwiya ibn Hishām, Umayyad ruler of al-Andalus 213, 303, 586, 592, 593–4, 597, 602
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān II, Umayyad ruler of al-Andalus 303, 343, 597, 602
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān III al-Nāṣir, Umayyad caliph of al-Andalus 597, 605, 613
 caliphate 342–3, 613–14
 coinage 618
 and Fāṭimids 613, 616–17
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Aḥmad 286–7
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn ‘Awf 405
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Ḥabīb al-Fihri 234, 590, 593
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Khayr 665
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn al-Manṣūr ibn Abī ‘Āmir (Sanjūl) 621
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Muḥammad ibn al-Ash‘ath 464
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Rustam 596–7
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Samura 464
- ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Yūsuf al-Fihri 593
- ‘Abd al-Waḥhāb ibn ‘Abd al-Raḥmān ibn Rustam 597–8
- ‘Abdān (Qarmaṭī) 328, 337
- Abī ‘Abda, Banū 594
- Abīvard 379, 454
- Abnā’ 274, 283, 284–5, 286, 290, 416, 472
 of Yemen 415, 417
abnā’ al-dawla (Khurāsānī troops) 530
- Abnun, inscription of 99–100
- Abraha, king of Ethiopia 179, 180, 183–4
- Abraham 156, 177, 189
- ‘Abs tribe 430
- Abu ‘l-‘Abbās *see* al-Musta‘īn
- Abu ‘l-‘Abbās ibn al-Muwaḥḥaq *see* al-Mu‘taḍid
- Abū al-‘Abbās al-Saffāḥ, caliph xxiv, 264, 266, 270, 471–2
- Abū ‘Abd Allāh al-Shī‘ī, *dā‘ī* 328–9, 340, 341, 615–16
 military campaigns 319, 330, 615–16
- Abū Aḥmad al-Mūsawī 392
- Abū ‘Alī al-Ṣaghānī 499, 500–1, 504
- Abū ‘Āshim 486
- Abū Ayyūb al-Muryānī 274
- Abū al-Bahlūl 446
- Abū Bakr, caliph 169, 194, 196, 203, 391
 conquest of Arabia 399, 416, 431
 conversion to Islam 186, 194
 Shī‘a and 205–6, 388, 389, 391
 and wars of apostasy, *ridāa* xxiii, 431, 440
- Abū Barā’ ‘Āmir ibn Malik 160
- Abu ‘l-Barakāt 578
- Abū Dāwūd Khālīd ibn Ibrāhīm 472–3
- Abū Dulaf 336, 502
- Abu ‘l-Faḍl al-Bal‘amī 345, 503
- Abu ‘l-Faraj al-Iṣfahānī 369
- Abu ‘l-Faḥḥ Dā‘ūd, ruler of Multān 376
- Abu ‘l-Fidā’ 628
- Abū Firās 537
- Abū Fudayk 441
- Abū al-Futūḥ, Ḥasan ibn Ja‘far (al-Rāshid bi-Allāh) 412
- Abū Ḥamza ibn ‘Awf 260, 418
- Abū Ḥanīfa 278, 501
- Abū Ḥarb al-Mubaraq‘ 528
- Abu ‘l-Hayjā ibn Ḥamdān 355
- Abū Ja‘far al-Manṣūr *see* al-Manṣūr
- Abu ‘l-Khaṭṭāb al-Ma‘āfirī 596
- Abu ‘l-Khaṭṭāb al-Kalbī 593
- Abu ‘l-Muhājir Dīnār 583
- Abū Muḥammad ibn Mukram 436

Index

- Abū Muslim al-Khurāsānī
 and ‘Abbāsīd revolution xxiv, 261, 469
 eliminates ‘Abd Allāh ibn Mu‘āwīya 261
 fall xxiv, 269, 340, 472, 478
 fusion of religious and local identity 470–1
 as governor of east 471, 476, 478, 480, 486
 and Hāshimiyya xxiv, 255, 261, 262
 as messianic figure 269, 550
 movements associated with 269, 476,
 478, 480
 revolt against Marwān II xxiv, 261, 469
- Abu ‘l-Najm ‘Imrān ibn Ismā‘īl 486
- Abu ‘l-Qāsim Muḥammad ibn ‘Abd Allāh al-Qā‘im, Fāṭimid caliph of Ifrīqiya 340,
 342, 564–5
- Abū Rakwa (‘the man with the goatskin
 waterbottle’) 575
- Abū Sa‘īd al-Jannābī 337, 443–4
- Abu ‘l-Sāj 320
- Abū Salama al-Khallāl 471, 472
- Abu ‘l-Sarāyā 285, 407–8
- Abū Sufyān 166, 167, 169, 191, 213, 513
- Abū Taghlib, Ḥamdānid ruler 368
- Abū Ṭāhir Sulaymān (Qarmāṭī) 351, 444–5
- Abū Ṭālha of the Kharaj 162
- Abū Ṭālib (uncle of the Prophet) 184, 187,
 188, 270
- Abū Yazīd Makhlad ibn Kaydad (*ṣāhib al-himar*,
 ‘the man with the donkey’) 342, 567, 617
- Abū Yūsuf 278
- Abyssinia, negus of 192, 250–1
- accessions, royal 142n, 310
- Achaemenids 99, 145, 146
- Acre 517
- Acton, 1st Baron 2, 3
- Adana 28, 529, 538–9
- Adata 28
- Aden 20, 58, 421, 424, 427, 429
- Adhri‘āt 536
- Adiabene 124
- administration
 ‘Abbāsīd 299, 332, 333–5, 349, 361;
 centralisation 241, 274, 276, 283, 284–5,
 659, 684; factionalism 323, 333–4,
 349–50; location within Baghdad 7;
 model for later states 333, 345–6, 364
 booty distribution 199–200, 208, 209, 255
 Christians and Jews barred from 334, 522
 cities and 41, 47, 48, 50–2; location of
 structures within 7, 674
 civil/military distinction 323, 335, 660
 core provinces 242–4, 275
 of early caliphate 208
- embezzlement investigations (*muṣādara*)
 334, 349–50, 351, 357
- historians work in 6
- iqṭā‘āt* for officials 354
- kinship networks 209, 242, 244, 274–5
- languages *see under* Arabic; Greek; and
 Persian languages
- local: bishops’ role 43, 515; gentry and 79–80,
 243–4
- mawālī* in 219, 419, 620
- military element 12, 241, 306, 332; and civil
 element 323, 335, 338, 660
- Umayyad 219, 220–1, 548–9, 684; Marwānid
 219–21, 241–4, 267
- see also* centralisation; *dīwāns*; governors,
 provincial; provinces; scribes;
 vizierate; and *under individual states*;
 provinces and rulers
- Adrianople, battle of (378) xxii, 83
- Adriatic region 29
- ‘Aḍud al-Dawla, Būyid ruler xxv, 366–7, 368,
 384, 386
- religious policies 388, 391
- adversarial culture of early Islamic world 690–2
- Afghanistan 28, 109, 214n, 216–17, 455
- economic activity 29, 662
- Ghaznavid rule 372, 376, 380, 505
- Afrāsīyāb *see* Samarqand
- Africa, East 57, 284, 681
- Omanī connections 432, 434, 437
- pottery imports 679–80, 682
- Africa, North 581–621
- ‘Abbāsīd rule 275, 302, 599–600
- Christianity 584, 609–10
- cities 44, 601–2, 671–2
- coinage 652, 681, 694, Pl. 16.4
- dynastic states: 14–15, 593–600; *see also*
 Aghlabids; Fāṭimids; Idrīsids;
 Midrārīds; Rustamids
- economy 64, 600–1, 678; agriculture 32, 61,
 63, 246, 684; gold trade 572, 595, 604,
 618, 662; pottery production 600–1,
 678; stock-raising 30, 35
- and Egypt 209, 541; raids mounted from 547,
 548
- Islamisation 604, 609–10
- Khārījites 302–3, 318, 342, 594–8
- landscape 19, 20
- map xxxvii
- Muslim conquests xxiii, 197, 218, 227, 548,
 581–5; preliminary campaigns 547,
 582–3, 590
- population 39, 604

Index

- pre-conquest period 581–2; *see also* Vandals
 Roman and Byzantine rule 61, 63, 581–3, 584
 Shi‘ism 325, 598
 society 581–2, 600–2, 603–7, 609–10
 Umayyad rule 209, 242, 244, 593, 595
see also Berbers; Ifriqiya; Maghrib; Vandals;
and individual dynasties
- Africa, sub-Saharan 32, 679–80
 gold trade 572, 595, 604, 618, 662
- Africa Proconsularis 582
- Afrighids 500
- Afshīn, ruler of Ushrūsana 289–90, 295, 296,
 297, 301, 482, 553
- Aftakīn 570, 573
- Agapius of Manbij 535
- Agathias 101
- Aghlabids 303, 304, 318–19, 599–600
 and ‘Abbasids 11, 318, 599–600
 and army 318–19, 610
 capital cities 341, 604–5; extra-urban palatine
 complexes 330, 341, 604–5, 615
 coinage 604–5
 conquests 304; Sicily 318–19, 610–11, 615
 Fātimids defeat 319, 330, 340, 613, 615
 Italian operations 615
 and Khārijites 318
 religious orthodoxy 304, 318–19, 606, 607
 style of government 304
 Ṭūlūnid attack 560
 and ‘*ulamā*’ 318–19, 606, 607
 unrest under 604–5, 610
- agriculture 12–13, 29–30, 682
 and army supply 30, 33, 226
 Beyşehir Occupation Phase 23
 cities’ hinterlands 50, 450
 climate and 19, 25, 29
 crops: cash 30–1; new 31, 670, 682; *see also*
individual crops, especially grain
 on desert margins 385
 dry and wet 29
 household plots 32
iqṭā‘āt affect 354
 market in produce 30–1, 32, 246
 Muḥammad’s and contemporaries’
 involvement 166–7, 168n, 404–5
 and pastoralism 30, 385
 and political power 382
quṣūr and 667–9
 regional variation 31, 32–3, 34–5
 self-sufficiency, near- 32
 and warfare 167, 277n, 360, 512
 workforce 33
 writings on 127
- yields 35
see also individual crops; grain; irrigation;
 land; livestock; *and under individual*
regions and taxation
- ahl al-bayt* (People of the Household
 (of the Prophet)) 261
- Aḥmad ibn ‘Abd al-‘Azīz ibn Abī Dulaf 336,
 Pl. 16.26
- Aḥmad ibn Abī Du‘ād 298, 308
- Aḥmad ibn Abī Khālid 492
- Aḥmad ibn ‘Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj,
 Ikhshīdīd ruler 562, 568
- Aḥmad ibn Asad, Sāmānid ruler
 289, 498
- Aḥmad ibn Būya *see* Mu‘izz al-Dawla
- Aḥmad ibn Ḥanbal 295, 531–2
- Aḥmad ibn Ibrāhīm al-Ḍabbī 389
- Aḥmad ibn ‘Isā 422
- Aḥmad ibn Ismā‘īl, Sāmānid ruler 500,
 502–3
- Aḥmad ibn Ismā‘īl ibn Aḥmad, Sāmānid
 ruler 498
- Aḥmad ibn Kayghalagh 565
- Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn, ruler of Egypt xxv, 319–22,
 535, 559–60, 562
 building works 321, 559–60
 campaigns and conquests 321–2, 559, 560;
 Egypt 535; Hijāz 409; Syria and
 Thughūr 321–2, 335, 559, 560, 561
 coinage 660
 and learned classes 322, 560
 and al-Musta‘īn 311, 320
- Aḥmad Ināl-Tagīn 378
- Aḥnaf ibn Qays 453, 454
- Ahnās (Ihnāsiyat al-Madīna) 212, 552
- al-Aḥsā’ 439
- Ahwāz 28, 352, 450, 459
- ‘Ā’isha 169, 204
- ajmād* (sing. *jund*, administrative sub-districts
 of Syria) 242, 517
- Ajnādayn, battle of 196, 512
- Akhbār al-dawla al-‘Abbāsiyya* 262n
- al-Akhḍar, Jabal 435
- Akhū Muslim 570
- al-Akhzar ibn Suḥayma 154
- Aksum *see* Ethiopia
- al-‘Alā’ ibn al-Ḥaḍramī 440, 450–1
- Alamanni 75
- Alamund, son of Witiza 585, 586
- Alans 83
- Alaric (Gothic leader) xxii, 83
- Albania, Caucasus 88, 139
- alcázar* of Cordoba 602

Index

- Aleppo 28, 196, 266, 536, 538
 coinage 663, Pl. 16.41
 culture 537–8, 694
 Fāṭimids and 539, 573–4, 578, 579
 mosque 521
 Ṭūlūnid rule 321, 561
see also Ḥamdānids; Mirdāsids; Sayf al-Dawla
- Alexander the Great, king of Macedon 74
 in Iranian tradition 147, 149, 150
- Alexandria 138, 514, 559, 579
 Andalusian occupation 552–3, 611
 Coptic patriarchate 541–3
 Fāṭimid occupation 340, 564, 565, 567, 568–9
 Muslim conquest 196, 543, 546, 581
- Alftakīn *see* Alptegin
- Algeciras 231, 592
- ‘Alī, son of Ibn al-Wazīr al-Jarawī 552, 553
- ‘Alī ibn Abī al-Hayjā’ *see* Sayf al-Dawla
- ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib, caliph xxiii, 204, 405
 administration 208, 455
 assassination xxiii, 204, 516
 civil war against Mu‘āwiyā *see* *fitnas* (first)
 conversion 186
 genealogies 188, 265, 270
 and Kharijites 207, 418, 516
 and Kūfa 400, 459
 Shī‘ite beliefs about 194, 205–7, 254, 326, 389
- ‘Alī ibn Būya (‘Imād al-Dawla) 347, 348, 356, 364–5, 366
- ‘Alī ibn al-Faḍl 422, 427
- ‘Alī ibn al-Furāt 333, 349, 350, 351
- ‘Alī ibn ‘Īsā ibn Dā‘ūd ibn al-Jarrāḥ 333, 350, 351, 352, 488
- ‘Alī ibn ‘Īsā ibn Māhān 283, 285, 473, 474
- ‘Alī ibn ‘Īsā al-Ṭulayṭūlī 619
- ‘Alī ibn Ja‘far ibn Falāḥ (Dhu ‘l-Riyāsatayn) 576
- ‘Alī ibn Mahdī 422
- ‘Alī ibn Mazyad al-Asadī xxv
- ‘Alī ibn Muḥammad (leader of Zanj revolt) 324, 443
- ‘Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj, ruler of Egypt 564, 566
- ‘Alī ibn Muḥammad al-Ṣulayhī 412, 427–8
- ‘Alī ibn Mūsā al-Riḍā 286, 390, 420, 475
- ‘Alī al-Jarawīyy 286, 287
- ‘Alī Tegīn 378–9
- ‘Alids 262, 272, 558
 and ‘Abbāsids 269–72, 277, 279–80, 282;
 al-Ma‘mūn 285, 286–7, 474
 Ḥasanids and Ḥusaynids 405, 411–13
 in Ḥijāz 405; economic activities 405;
 rebellions 407–9, 410
- popular support in east 388, 472, 484
 tombs venerated 389–90
see also *individual family members*
- Allāh (pre-Islamic high god) 161
- allegiance, proclamation of 386
see also *khuṭba*
- Almanzor *see* al-Manṣūr, Muḥammad ibn Abī‘Amir
- Almeria 618–19, 621
- alms-tax 402, 425
- Alptegin (Alftakīn), ruler of Ghazna 371–2, 446, 504
- Altūntāsh, *khwārazmshāh* 379
- Alvarus (Cordoban Mozarab) 608–9
- Ama ibn Ḥarām, king in Yathrib 168
- Āmajūr 321, 560
- Amida (Diyarbakr) 27
 Byzantine–Sasanian wars 82, 85, 134–5
 Marwānid principality xxv, 381, 382, 383
- al-Amīn, caliph 270, 284–5, 302, 407, 420
 civil war against al-Ma‘mūn xxiv, 284–6, 474, 528, 552–3; and al-Rashīd’s covenant of succession 282–3, 407, 473–4
 coinage 285, Pl. 16.17
 death 285, 474, 491
- ‘Amir, Banū 430, 438, 443, 444
- ‘Amir ibn Sa‘a‘a, Banū 160
- amīrs* 241, 315, 325
al-ḥajj *see* pilgrimage (leadership)
āl Muḥammad, Abū Muslim as 471
al-umarā’, power of 355–6
see also governors, provincial
- ‘Ammān 674
- Ammianus Marcellinus 90–1, 100
- ‘Ammuriya (Amorion) 302, 529
- amphorae 678
- al-amr bi-l-ma‘rūf wa-l-nahy ‘an al-munkar* (Commanding of Right and Forbidding of Wrong) 425
- ‘Amr ibn al-‘Āṣ 167, 195, 590
 conquest of Egypt 196, 543, 547, 581
 Mosque of, Fuṣṭāṭ 546, 548, 564, 575
- ‘Amr ibn Ḥazm, letter of Prophet to 174–5
- ‘Amr ibn al-Itṅāba, king of Yathrib 165, 168
- ‘Amr ibn al-Layth, Ṣaffārid leader 316, 336–7, 496, 497
 defeat by Sāmānid Ismā‘īl ibn Aḥmad 336–7, 344, 497, 499
 and ideal of *jihād* 317
- ‘Amr ibn Ma‘dikarib 416
- ‘Amr ibn Sa‘īd 215, 216

Index

- ‘Amrūs, Banū 612
amṣār (sing. *mīṣr*) *see* garrison towns
 Āmul 238, 480, 482, 484
 ‘Amwās, Plague of 512, 513
 Anahita; shrine at Iṣṭakhr 143
 Ānandpāl, *rāja* of Wayhind 376
 Anastasius, Roman emperor 43, 65, 134–5
 Anastasius of Sinai 534
 Anatolia 19
 Beṣḥehir Occupation Phase 22–3
 cities 44, 45
 climate 23, 25
 economic activity 25, 29, 30, 32, 35, 64
 frontier with Islamic world 199
 Kurds *see* Marwānids (Kurdish)
 landscape 19, 21–2
 Muslim campaigns xxiii, 234–6, 278–9, 290,
 296, 514, 529, 530
 routes 28–9
 Sasanian campaigns 138, 139
 settlement pattern 38, 45
 Anbār 386
 Ancyra 235
 al-Andalus (Spain, Iberian Peninsula) 303, 318,
 342–3, 581–621
 administration 589; Umayyad 594, 602, 605,
 619, 620, 621
 agriculture 618, 670
 Alexandria briefly held by Andalusians
 552–3
 army 234, 591–2, 620, 621
 Berbers in 233–4, 594, 608, 621; revolts 233–4,
 589–93, 594
 and Carolingians 281, 303, 589
 Christians 587, 608–9; wars against 318,
 342–3, 611–12, 620
 cities 601–2, 618–19, 670
 coinage 588–9, 652, 657, 681
 corruption 620
 exiles in Fez 603
 as frontier society 318, 342–3, 587
 irrigation 670
 Islamisation 607–9, 619
 justice 619
 land 588, 618
 languages: Arabic 608–9; Latin 587, 608–9;
 Spanish 608
 Mālikī school of law 619
 map xxxvii
 Marwānids and 231–2, 234, 244
 mining 36
 Muslim conquest 12, 231–2, 547, 581, 584–9
 muwalladūn 588, 612–13
 palatine city, Madīnat al-Zahrā’ 605, 620, 621
 religious views 594, 606–7, 613, 619, 620
 society 600–3, 605, 606–9
 sources 587, 588
 Syrian *junds* 234, 591–2, 619, 620, 621
 Ṭā’ifa kingdoms 621
 taxation 586, 588–9, 592, 619; administration
 586, 588, 589, 592; census 589; revolts
 603, 612–13
 trade 618, 682
 ‘ulamā’ 606–7
 Visigoths 231–2, 250–1, 585, 608; breakdown
 of administration 581, 585–6; Muslim
 conquest 231–2, 581, 585; under Muslim
 rule 581, 585–8, 612–13
 Umayyad STATE 213, 303, 318, 342–3, 597
 ‘Abbāsīd enmity 281, 303
 administration 594, 602, 605, 619,
 620, 621
 caliphate 303, 342–3, 613–14, 618–21
 coinage 605, 612, 618
 culture 303, 613
 emirate 302, 303, 593–4
 fall 605
 and Faṭimids 343, 616–17
 graves of *amīrs* 602
 land and revenues 588–9
 rebellions against 612–13
 religious affairs 303, 606, 607, 613
 taxation 592, 605, 619
 warfare 605, 611–13
 see also individual rulers
 al-Andarīn 666–7
andarz texts 125, 127–8
 Andegan, Lords of 121
 Andrae, Tor 630
 Anērān (non-Iran) 143–4
 angels 176, 190
 animal husbandry 27, 35
 see also pastoralism
 ‘Anjar 248, 249, 526
 plan 671, 672, 674
 Ankara 235
 ‘Annāzīds 381, 383
anṣār (‘Helpers’) 159, 168, 187, 188
 Antalas, Berber chieftain 582
 anthropomorphism (*tashbīh*) of God 293
 Antioch 28, 199, 508, 517, 532, 540
 Sasanian–Byzantine wars 76, 86, 108, 135, 569
 Anti-Taurus mountains 22, 28, 382
 Anūshirwān, Sasanian ruler 127–8
 Apamea 28, 64, 508, 540
 apocalyptic 219, 264, 617, 644–5

Index

- apologetics
 Christian 523
 Islamic 175
- apostasy 463–4
 wars of, *see* *ridda* wars
- aqueducts, renovation of Roman 669
- a'rab*; use of term 324–5
- Arabia 397–447
 agriculture 30, 32, 57–8, 441, 447, 670
 irrigation 57–8, 670
 landscape 20
 regional diversity 182–3, 397
 resources 20, 57–8, 174, 670; mineral 35, 36
 routes 28, 57, 389, 420, 442
 social environment 57–8, 153, 154, 155–6, 157, 397, 686
- PRE-ISLAMIC PERIOD 9, 153–70, 177–8, 398–9
 fortified dwellings 678
 genealogies 153, 154–5, 157
 historiography 153–6
jāhiliyya ethos 177–8, 224
 Jews 161, 178–80; *see also* *under* Medina; Yemen
 law 157
 militarisation of society 96, 97
 nomadic and settled populations' relations 157–61
 oral tradition 157
 and origins of Islam 20, 177–83, 643, 683–4
 poetry 96, 161, 180
 political instability 20
 religions 643; Allāh as High God 161; Arab monotheism 177–83, 223–4; Christianity 92–3, 138, 157, 161, 178–80; idol worship 161–3, 177, 178; Judaism 161, 178–80; Manichaeism 131
 resources 57–8
 Roman relations 57, 58, 96–7, 163–4, 183, 223; Arab clients 89–93, 96–7, 135, 164, 88, 97
 Sasanians and 57, 66–7, 73, 113, 137, 163–6, 182, 223; allies 90–1, 92; *see also* Lakhmids; control of southern xxii, 58, 111, 136, 162, 164, 439, 440
 social environment 57–8, 153, 154, 155–6, 157
 sources 5, 153–4, 155–6
 trade 20, 57, 399; Meccan role 20, 27, 60, 166, 182, 399, 643; and origin of Islam 20, 182, 643
see also *under* Ḥijāz; Mecca; Medina; Yemen
- ISLAMIC PERIOD 397–447
 under 'Abbāsids 306, 361
 and caliphate 7–8, 209, 397, 416–17, 686
 central and eastern 438–47; *see also* Baḥrayn; Najd; Yamāma
 Christians 398–9, 417, 439, 532
 governors 440, 441, 442
 Jews 173, 189, 398–9, 439
 Khārijism 260, 407, 418, 419, 422–3, 430, 441; *see also* *under* Oman; Yemen
 lawlessness 389
 Muslim conquests and influence 174, 192, 399, 416, 431, 684
 Nizārīs 694
 political instability 20
 Šaffārīds and 409, 435
 scholarship 447
 society 397, 686
 sources 397
 trade 398–9, 643, 678
see also Arabs; Bedouin; *and individual* places, particularly Baḥrayn; Ḥijāz; Mecca; Medina; Najd; Oman; Yamāma; Yemen
- Arabia, Roman province of 28, 57, 89
- Arabic language
 administrative use 242, 333, 361, 470, 520, 549, 684; tax documents 208, 219
 in al-Andalus 608–9
 dialects 161
 in Egypt 541, 549, 555
 Ghaznavid use 375
 high culture 161, 361, 369, 375, 494
hijra and associated terms 187–8
 inscriptions, and Muslim identity 682
 in late 'Abbāsīd period 13, 14, 361
 of Qur'ān 181–2, 187
 Sāmānīd use 345
 Spanish assimilation of definite article in loanwords 608
 in Syria 507, 508, 509, 520, 534–5
 translation into 208, 291, 638
- Arabisation 224, 355, 534, 553–6, 604
see also Arabic language
- Arabs, in Islamic period (*for pre-Islamic period, see* Arabia (PRE-ISLAMIC))
 banditry 90
 and Berbers, in Sicily 319
 cavalry 538
 Christian 510, 532
 conquests as Muslim rather than Arab 645–6
 in east 458–61, 469, 470–1, 477
 in Egypt 546, 550–3, 557

Index

- elites 31, 205, 214–15, 224, 383, 521–2;
 al-Manṣūr and 274, 275, 302, 528
 and Iranian culture 282, 289, 301–2, 645
 migrations 447, 557
 nomadic, semi-nomadic and settled
 populations 153
 northern and southern 153, 156
 oral tradition and writing 153–4
 sources' bias 153, 154, 155–6
 in Syria 512, 513
 tactics 197
 taxation 219
 wealth as motive for expansion 96
 and Zanj revolt 324–5
see also Bedouin
- Aramaic language 507, 509, 510
 in Palmyra 76, 77, 78
 Qur'an uses terms from 181
- Arbela, Chronicle of 101
- arbitration 174
- Arcadius, Byzantine emperor 133–4
- archaeology and material culture 4, 6, 641,
 664–82
 cities 670–8, 682
 continuity from Late Antiquity 664,
 666, 682
 countryside 666–70; *see also* *quṣūr*
 Muslim identity in 665–6
 and trade 678–81, 682
see also under individual places
- archers, mounted 129, 130, 363, 538
- architecture
 decoration 667
 inscriptions 682
 Sāmarrān style 297–8
 Visigothic 608
*see also individual types of building; building
 and construction; and under individual
 regions and rulers*
- Ardabīl 236, 237, 458
- Ardashīr, king of Adiabene 124
- Ardashīr I, Sasanian ruler xxii, 75, 108, 151
 bas-reliefs 76, 104–5
 court 124
 cult of 115
 in historical tradition 147–8
 palaces 105–6
 and taxation 52
 title 114
- Ardashīr II, Sasanian ruler 118, 151
- Ardashīr III, Sasanian ruler 152
- Ardashīr Khwarrah (Gūr) 105
- Ardashīr romance 125
- Arethas (al-Ḥārith ibn Jabala, Ghassānid)
 xxii, 92
- 'Arfaja ibn Harthama 196
- arḥā' al-'arab* ('millstones of the Arabs',
 nomads) 157
- aristocracy
 and anti-'Abbāsīd revolts 478–9
 idol worship by Medinans 162, 163
 Visigothic 585–8
see also under Sasanian empire
- arithmetic 333
- Armenia 467
 Christianity 531, 533
 coinage 656, Pl. 16.17
 and Kurds 382
 literature 102
 Marwānīd rule 218, 236–7, 244
 minerals 36
 Mu'āwiya's attacks 514
 rebellions 102, 236, 299; Khurramiyya 287–8
 Roman–Sasanian wars 75, 88, 148; third/
 fourth-century xxii, 82–3, 84,
 108, 109; sixth-century 135, 136
śāh (petty kings) 128
 Shaddādīd power 382
- Armenian language 533
- armies
 discipline in tribal states 363
 ethnically mixed, in Egypt 559,
 577, 579
 factionalism, in Egypt 552, 573, 579
 finance 60, 61, 68–9, 107, 363
 household regiments 567, 569
 supply 30, 33, 35, 60, 226
see also army, caliphal; cavalry; *ghulām*;
 mercenaries; warfare; *and under* slaves
 and slavery *and individual states*
- army, caliphal
 in 'Abbāsīd restoration 332, 333, 335
 administration; *dīwān al-jaysh* 332
 and caliphal office 232–3, 301
 donatives 310, 349
 ethnic composition 290, 296, 309, 470–1, 530,
 584–5, 590
 factionalism 301, 302, 313, 573; *see also* Qays;
 Yaman (tribal faction); *and under* Syro-
 Jazīran tribal *below*
 finance 310, 311, 313, 332, 333
 governmental role 306, 309, 332, 335, 352
iqṭā'āt 312, 313, 352–4, 577
 local levies 238
 Marwānīd reforms 217–19, 228–9
mawālī in 465

Index

- army, caliphal (cont.)
 al-Muwaffaq's leadership 314, 323, 335
 professionalisation 217–18, 220, 251–2
 quarters in cities 297, 312, 321, 546, 604, 675–8
 and Sāmarrān crisis 332
 size and capabilities 197–8
 supply 226
 Syro-Jazīran tribal 513; under 'Abbāsids
 266–7, 275, 279, 290, 528, 530; in Egypt
 546, 549, 550, 552, 553, 558, 592;
 factionalism 218, 234, 239–40, 242, 253,
 259, 518–19, 523, 552; *see also* Qays,
 Yaman (tribal faction); under Hishām
 524–5, 527; incompatibility with
 universal Islamic empire 226–7, 230;
 Marwānid reliance on 217–18, 226–7,
 228, 242–3, 251–2, 252–3, 527; Mu'āwiya
 and 513, 516; organisation 242, 517;
 professionalisation 217–18, 220, 251–2;
 in west 234, 318–19, 591–2, 594, 599, 619,
 620, 621
 tactics 197
 Turkish corps xxv, 296, 297, 310, 685;
 commanders' political power xxv,
 296, 297, 301, 308, 310; creation 287–8,
 290; enmity between commanders
 and men 309, 310; and al-Mu'tašim 296,
 298, 301; and al-Mutawakkil xxv, 298,
 299, 301, 306, 308, 309
 see also administration (military element)
 and under individual caliphs
- Arrajān 452
 'Arrām al-Sulamī 158
 Arrān 244, 449, 467
 Arsacids 115, 147–8
 Artabanus V, king of Parthia xxii, 75, 104–5
 artisans 129, 555, 602–3, 650
 arts *see* architecture; decorative arts; frescoes;
 history and historiography;
 iconography; literature; poetry; reliefs,
 Sasanian rock-cut; scholarship; visual art
- Arṭubās, son of Witiza 585, 586
 Artuqids 663
 al-'Arūs palace, Sāmarrā' 297
 Arwā, Ṣulayhī queen 429–8
 'aṣabiyya (tribal factionalism) 253, 346–7
 Asad, Banū 154, 386
 Mazyadid state xxv, 362, 384–5, 386
 Asad ibn 'Abd Allāh, governor of Khurāsān
 463, 498
 Asad ibn al-Furāt 611
 Asad ibn Sāmān-khudā
asbadhiyyūn of Baḥrayn 439
- al-Aṣbagh, son of 'Abd al-'Azīz 548
 asceticism 161, 358
 al-Aṣfar ('Uqaylī leader) 446
 Asfār ibn Shīrawayh 347
 Ash'arī colonists of Qumm 459, 463
 al-Ash'ath ibn Qays 416
 Ashīr 617
 Ashmunayn 554, 566, 571–2
 Ashnās 297, 301, 557
 Ashot Bagratouni 237
ashraf (tribal chiefs) 205, 251–2, 411–13
 of Egypt 569, 570
 under Marwānids 249–50, 251–2, 252–3, 257,
 258, 259
 Mu'āwiya's rule through 209
 violate Holy Cities and pilgrimage 406,
 411, 413
 and Yazīd III 257
- Asia, Central
 coinage 662
 landscape 21
 manpower 493, 685
 Muslim conquest xxiii, 227, 456–8
 Roman–Sasanian conflict in 87–8
 Sāmānid geographers on 501–2
 trade 49, 67, 684
 see also individual places, peoples and states
- Asia, South and South-East 284, 678, 680–1, 682
 see also individual states
- Asia Minor *see* Anatolia
 al-'Askar, Fustāt 550
 'Askar Mukram 327
 associations, social 356–7
 astral cult of Ḥarrān 509
 astrology 273, 296
 astronomy 423
 Asturias 232, 612
 al-Aswad al-'Ansī 415–16
 Aswan 557, 559
 Athaulf, Gothic leader 83
 Atlantic Ocean 583
 Atlas mountains 20, 30, 599
 Attila, leader of Huns 83
 Aurelian, Roman emperor 77
 authority
 'Abbāsids and religious 291–5, 301
 of Shī'ite imams 326
 see also under caliphate
- Autun 232
 Avars 88, 136, 138, 139
 Averroes (Ibn Rushd) 638
 Avesta 127, 146
 commentaries 102

Index

- Avicenna (Ibn Sīnā) 369, 501
 al-ʿAwāṣim 279
awqāf (charitable trusts) 619
 Awraja Berbers 598
 Aws, Banū 164–5, 168–70, 169–70
 idol worship 162, 163
 al-Awzāʿī 532
 Ayla 672–3, 674
 ʿ*ayyārūn* (popular militias) 316, 317, 489, 493, 494
 Ayyūbids 429, 663
azādān (Sasanian social group) 115, 461
 Azarmigdukht (Sasanian queen) 118, 152
 Azd, Banū 163, 164, 415, 430, 434, 435
 see also Julandā dynasty; Yazīd ibn al-Muhallab
 Azerbaijan 21, 28, 467–8
 coinage 656, 660
 economic activity 30, 36
 Khurramiyya revolt 287–8, 477
 Kurds 381, 383
 under Marwānids 236, 237, 244
 Muslim conquest 452
 Rawwādīd dynasty 381
 Sasanian–Roman campaign 137
 Shaddādīd dynasty 381, 382, 383
 Takht-i Sulaiman sanctuary 106
 al-ʿAzīz, Fāṭimīd caliph 570, 571, 573–4, Pl. 16.36
 Azraqī principality 460, 487

 al-Bāb, Bāb al-Abwab 236, 452, 458
 Bābak al-Khurramī 287, 477, 482, 492
 Babylon, Egypt 543, 546
 Babylonian Talmud 130
 Bactria 29, 109
 see also Afghanistan
 Badajoz 618–19
 Bādghīs 316, 455, 476–7, 494
 Badr, battle of 190
 Badr ibn Ḥasanwayh 381
 Badr al-Jamālī 579
 Baghdad
 archaeology 2, 6, 664
 attacks and threats: Barīdī 355; Mongol 11;
 Muḥammad ibn ʿAbd Allāh ibn Ṭāhir
 315; Qarmaṭī 351, 444; Saljūq 369, 579;
 Ṭāhir ibn al-Ḥusayn xxiv, 285, 474;
 Yaʿqūb ibn al-Layth xxv, 495–6
 Būyid rule xxv, 6, 365, 366–9, 384–5,
 393; *see also* ʿAḍud al-Dawla; Aḥmad
 ibn Būya; Jalāl al-Dawla
 as caliphal capital 7, 12, 273, 528, 529, 674,
 691; return from Marw 286, 474–5;
 return from Sāmarrāʾ 300, 335

 in civil wars 6, 310; siege xxiv, 285, 474
 coinage 657, 681
 communications 13, 272
 congregational mosque 7, 273
 cultural importance 301, 304
 decline under late ʿAbbāsids 6, 11, 386, 694
 economy 301, 304, 528, 681
 foundation xxiv, 1–2, 7, 12, 272–3, 528,
 674, 691
 garrison 296, 367, 368
 Ibn Rāʿiq as military governor xxv, 354
 al-Karkh quarter 388, 390
 as Madīnat al-Salām 272, 681
 palaces 7, 273, 492
 qādī, chief 278, 392
 religion: al-Ḥallāj 350; Ḥanbalis 307, 350;
 Shīʿa–Sunnī tensions 388, 389, 390,
 391, 393
 Round City 7, 272–3, 674, 691; ruin 6, 11
 in Sāmarrāʾ period 289, 297, 300, 310
 scholarship 301, 361, 388, 688–9
 security forces 289, 310, 314, 492
 Baghgh 454
 Bahāʾ al-Dawla, Būyid ruler of Baghdad 366–7,
 392, 436, 499
 Bāhila, Banū 456
 Bahmana, administrator of Abīvard 463
 Bahram *see* Wahrām
 Baḥrayn, medieval province of 438–47
 administration 397, 401, 442, 443
 and conquests 440, 450–1, 452
 Kharijism 418
 landscape 20
 and Mahdism 614
 and Oman 431, 432, 434, 435, 436, 440–1
 Qarmāṭī state 337, 351–2, 443–7; and Bedouin
 384, 446; and Fāṭimids 444, 445, 446,
 569–70, 574; and Ikhshīdids 446, 568;
 and Mecca, sack and capture of Black
 Stone xxv, 351, 410, 445; and Oman 435,
 436; and pilgrimage caravans 383, 444,
 446, 447; Syrian campaigns 446, 568,
 569–70; state formation 358, 445–6, 447
 ridā 440
 under Sasanians 58, 164
 trade 432, 440–1
 Bajkam 354, 355, 660, Pl. 16.27
 Bakbak (or Bayākbak) 320, 559
 al-Bakhrāʾ 247, 257, 666
 Bakhtiyār, Būyid ruler of Baghdad 366, 384,
 389, 390–1
 Bakīl tribal confederation 415
 Bakkār ibn Qutayba, *qādī* of Egypt 560

Index

- Bakr tribal confederation 439, 441, 443
 Bakr ibn Wā'il, tribe of 164
 Baktuzun 505
 al-Balādhurī, Aḥmad ibn Yahyā 276, 465, 629
 Balas, shah of Persia 85, 152
 Balī tribe 168
 Balkans
 Beyshehir Occupation Phase 22–3
 economic activity 29, 30, 35, 36, 64
 frontier supply 63
 Goths 83–4
 landscape 19, 22
 routes 29
 settlement pattern 38, 45
 Balxh 239, 282, 497
 coinage 662, 681
 Ghaznavid rule 372, 374
 Muslim conquest and government 238, 454,
 455, 459, 463
 routes 28, 468
 Sāmānids' possible origin in 344–5, 498
 trade 50, 681
 al-Balkhī, Abū Zayd 448, 502
 Balqā' 539, 669
 Baltic region 284, 662, 681
 Bamm 453
 Bāmyān 372
 Banbhore 673, 680
 banditry 90
 Bar Hebraeus (Gregory Abū al-Faraj) 535
 barbarians, western 82–4
 Barcelona 303, 612
 Bard-i Neshāndeh 48
 Bargawāta sect 595–6
 Bari, emirate of 611
 Barīdī family 352, 355, 356
 Barjawān 573, 575, 576
 barley 32
 Barmakid family xxiv, 281–2, 302, 357
 and Hārūn al-Rashīd 280, 281–2, 283
 provincial governors 289, 419, 473
 Barqa (Cyrenaica) 20, 30, 559
 and Fāṭimids 564, 565, 568, 574, 578
 Muslim conquest 230, 541, 544, 582–3, 590
 barter and payments in kind 61, 245
 al-Basāsiri, Abū 'l-Ḥarith Arslan al-Muzaffar 579
 Basharūd, revolt of 553–4
 Baṣra 288, 366, 418–19, 450, 517, 654
 administrative role 431, 467
 archaeology 664
 coinage 657
 conquests by forces from 450, 451, 452–3,
 459, 468, 469
 egalitarianism 207–8
 garrison founded 196
 governors 209, 274, 275, 354, 442, 455
 Ibrāhīm ibn 'Abd Allah's revolt 271, 275
 Khārījites 432, 595, 596–7
 and Oman 431, 432, 436
 Qarmaṭi attacks 351, 383, 422, 444, 446
 scholarship 153–4, 525, 532
 trade 13, 679–80
 Zanj revolt and 323, 324–5
 baths and bathhouses 670, 675
 Bāṭina 430, 435
 Shī'a disparaged as 'Bāṭinis' 374
 baṭns (small tribal groups) 162–3
 Bāwandids 479, 481, 482, 484
 Bāyakkāk (or Bākkāk) 320, 559
 Bayān al-Nahdī 254
 al-Bayḍā' 237
 Bayhāq 454
 Bayhaqī, Abū 'l-Faḍl 375, 377–8
 Baysān (Bet Shean, Scythopolis) 248, 671
 bayt māl al-'amma (public treasury) 334
 bayt māl al-khaṣṣa (privy purse) 334
 Bedouin
 in Arabian Peninsula 20, 161, 167, 361, 383,
 398–9; emigration 400, 447;
 relationships with settled populations
 157–61, 400, 413
 in armies of conquest 383
 and cities 384, 385–6
 competition over pasture 386
 in Egypt 557, 568, 577
 elite 383
 genealogies 153
 in al-Ḥusayn ibn Zikrawayh's force 338
 Jewish and Christian 161
 Khārījism 383
 migrations 400, 447, 557
 Muḥammad and 159–60, 190, 438
 and power politics 91
 and Qarāmiṭa 328, 383, 384, 446
 Roman clients 89–90
 and settled populations 157–61, 384, 385–6,
 400, 413
 sources' emphasis 153, 154
 successor states 383–7; *see also individual
 states*
 in Syria 361, 412, 507, 512, 513, 577–8
 and Zanj revolt 324–5, 409
 see also individual tribes
 Beirut 508
 al-Beja (Nubian tribal grouping) 302, 557
 Bela 50

Index

- Benevento, Lombard ducate of 611
 Benjamin I, Coptic patriarch 543, 544
 Berbers 581–3
 Awraḡa 598
 in Fāṭimid state 576, 577
 and Idrīs ibn ‘Abd Allāh 280, 304
 Khārījism 38, 233, 302–3, 342, 594–8, 617
 Kutāma 340, 573, 617; Abū ‘Abd Allāh’s
 following 319, 328–9, 330, 615
 Lawāta 590
 military manpower 231, 319, 577, 582, 584–5,
 590, 620, 621
 Muslim conquest and aftermath 583, 590
 pre-conquest history 581–3
 revolts 564, 594, 617; of 122/740 xxiv, 233–4,
 550, 551–2, 589–93, 595, 596
 slavery 231, 590
 Walila confederation 304
 see also Rustamids; Warfajjūma; *and under*
 al-Andalus
- Beroea *see* Aleppo
 Bet Shean *see* Baysān
 Beth Lapat
 Synod of 134
 see also Jundishāpūr
- Beṣṣehir Occupation Phase 22–3
 Bhīmpāl, *rāja* of Wayhind 376
 Bihāfarīd 476
 Bilbays 550
 bills of exchange (*ḥawāla*) 649
 Bīmand 453
 biographical dictionaries 463, 465, 525, 607,
 629, 634
 birthmark, the man with the (al-Ḥusayn ibn
 Zikrawayh) 338, 355, 561–2
- Birūdh 453
 Birzāl, Banū 620
 Bishāpūr (Weh-Shabuhr) 99, 100, 105,
 106, 654
 bishops 510, 515, 609
 civic role 43, 95, 515
bism allāh 654, 665, Pl. 16.7
 Black Sea 19, 21–2, 27, 35, 36
 Black Stone xxv, 351, 410, 445
 Bleda, leader of Huns 83
 Bobastro 612
 Book of lords *see* X^w *adāy-nāmag*
 booty 199–200, 201, 363
 distribution systems 199–200, 208,
 209, 255
 Ghaznavid acquisition 371, 376–7
 borders *see* boundaries; frontier districts
 Bostra (Buṣrā) 64, 536
- boundaries
 political; permeability to commerce
 58–9, 66
 Roman–Persian 58, 66, 110, 135
 tribal, in pre-Islamic Arabia 157
- brass 36
 Brett, Michael 331–2
 Bridge, battle of the 107n, 112, 196
 Britain 36, 74, 83
 bronze 36
 Brown, Peter 643
 Bu‘āth, battle of 168, 169
bucellarii 87
 Buddhism 240, 282
 Bughā the Elder (Bughā al-Kabīr) 301, 310,
 408, 443
 Bughā the Younger 305, 310, 311
 Bughrā Khān, Qarakhānid ruler 504
 Bughrachuq, Ghaznavid ruler 372
- building and construction
 private, encroaching on urban public
 space 670–1
 Roman civic 80
 Sasanians use Roman captive labour 26,
 106, 129
 see also individual types of building;
 architecture; cities and towns (plans);
 and under individual regions and rulers
- Bukhārā 304
 coinage 658, 662, Pls. 16.19, 16.32
 conquest 238, 456, 457
 conversion 465; and apostasy 463–4
 fortifications 344
 al-Muqanna’ threatens 477
 Qarakhānid occupation 374, 378, 504, 505
 Sāmānid rule 289, 344, 371, 372, 499–500
- Bukht, Banū 594
 Bulghār lands, Ibn Faḍlān’s journey to 502
 Bulkawara, palace of 297
bullae, Sasanian 106, 679
 Bulliet, R. 639
 Buluggīn ibn Zīrī 574, 618
 bureaucracy *see* administration; scribes
 bureaux of state *see* *dīwāns*
 burial practices in al-Andalus 608
 Burton, John 635
 Burzoy (Persian physician) 127
 Būshanj 285, 473
 Bushihr 678
 Būṣīr 264–5
 Buṣrā (Bostra) 64, 536
 Bust 316, 372, 464, 486, 494
 ‘*ayyārūn* 316, 317, 489

Index

- Būyid (Buwayhid) dynasty 346–8,
 364–70, 694
 and ‘Abbāsids 348, 358, 364, 365, 660
 Bedouin polities supersede 383
 coins with honorific titles 660, Pl. 16.28
 culture 369
 Daylamite origins 346–8, 369
 family ties and politics 364, 365–6, 367
 genealogy 366
 and Ghaznavids 370, 373, 374
ghulam-based states 363, 368, 370, 386
 and Ḥamdānids 367–8
 and Ḥijāz 410, 411
 modern scholarship and 638, 641
 and Oman 435, 436–7
 and Persian symbols of sovereignty 694–5
 and Qarmāṭīs 444–5, 446
 rise 347–8, 356
 and Saljūqs 379; conquest by 365, 369
 and Sāmānids 346, 367, 499, 500–1
 Shī‘ism 356, 369, 370, 388, 389–92, 538, 693
 and ‘Uqaylids 384, 386
see also ‘Aḍud al-Dawla; Aḥmad ibn Būya;
 ‘Alī ibn Būya; Ḥasan ibn Būya; Jalāl al-
 Dawla; *and under* Baghdad; Fārs; Rayy
- Byzantium 582–3
 Byzantium *see* Roman/Byzantine empire
- Caesar, C. Julius 74
 Caesarea Maritima 508, 512, 540
 Caetani, Leone 630
 Cahen, Claude 639
 Cairo 6, 297–8, 321
see also Fuṣṭāṭ; al-Qāhira; al-Qaṭā’īf
- Calder, N. 632
 calendar xxi, 208
 caliphate
 assassinations affect perceptions of 285, 300,
 306–7, 356–7
 authority 7–8, 221, 232–3, 686–7; generals
 and 232–3, 301; late ‘Abbāsīd loss 301,
 304, 306–7; al-Mutawakkil and 298,
 299, 301; religious 7–8, 194–5, 280,
 291–5, 525, 685–6; religious-military–
 political fusion 174, 203
 Byzantine emperors’ letters to 210
 constitutional significance of late
 ‘Abbāsīd 362
 in context of Late Antiquity 8–9
 cultural importance of late ‘Abbāsīd 304,
 356–7
 dynastic states share concept of 13–14
ghāzī-caliphs 279, 335, 342, 529, 531
 and governors 241, 276, 686
 Hishām’s expansion of power 229
 Khārījite beliefs on 207–8
khuṭba in name of 316–17, 343, 574, 649
 lands gained after conquests 200
 military leadership 280, 336, 529
 Muḥammad as inspiration 7–8, 10–11
 patents of investiture 495
 pilgrimage led by caliphs and family
 members 278, 402
 reasons for establishment 194–5
 reformed, movements aiming at
 restoration of 322
 ‘rightly guided’ caliphs 392, 690, 692, 693
 Shī‘a and 203, 206–7; cursing of early 388,
 389, 391, 575
 sources on early 307, 628, 630
 statecraft and organisation of early 113
 titles 210, 216
 and tradition 294–5, 301, 686–7
 unified; end of sense of 306–7
 universality 273
see also under al-Andalus (UMAYYAD
 STATE); Fātimids
- calligraphy 288, 333
 Callinicum
 battle of 85–6, 92
see also al-Raqqā
- Camel, battle of the xxiii, 204
 camels 27, 507
 cameos 106, 140
 camphor 201
 canals 34, 248, 276, 354, 669
 defensive value of Sasanian 112
 law on 493
 cantonments, military 297, 321, 604, 675–8
 Cappadocia 108, 235
 captives 26, 106, 400, 512
see also slaves and slavery
- caravans 27, 49–50, 190
 Palmyrene 76, 90
 pilgrimage 446, 568; attacks on 351, 361, 383,
 406, 444, 568
 pre-Islamic Arabian trade 160, 165, 166
 caravanserais, Sasanian 66
 Carlyle, Thomas 628
 Carmathians *see* Qarāmiṭa
 Carolingian empire 281, 303, 589
 carpet, ‘Khusrau’s spring’ 125
 Carthage
 Byzantine rule 83, 583
 Christianity 609
 coinage 652

Index

- Muslim conquest xxiii, 584, 601
 Vandal conquest xxii, 83
 Casanova, Paul 640, 644
 Casius, Visigothic noble 587
 Caspian Gates 135
 Caspian region 467, 468, 479–84
 geography 21, 24; routes 26, 28
 political history 15, 468, 479–84, 493
 Cassius Dio 100
 castles, desert *see quṣūr*
 cattle-rearing regions 30
 Caucasus 26, 28, 281, 467
 coinage 663; hoards 603
 Marwānid operations 234–5, 236–7
 mining 36
 Romans and Sasanians in 36, 134, 135
 cavalry
 Arab 130, 538
 ghulām 363
 Kurdish 364
 Sasanian heavy 86, 129, 130, 164, 451
 Turkish 363, 364, 368, 573
 Cave, feast of the 391
 cemeteries 608, 609–10
 census
 Muslim 243, 520, 549, 589
 Roman 79
 Sasanian 110
 centralisation 466
 ‘Abbāsīd 241, 274, 276, 283, 284–5, 659, 684
 minting 211–12, 220, 656–7, 659
 Sasanian 51
 Umayyad 210–11, 213, 220, 233, 241–4, 684
 cereals *see* grain
 ceremonial
 ‘Abbāsīd 275, 280, 298, 308
 Byzantine imperial 80
 Fāṭimid 573
 Umayyad innovations 210, 674
 Ceuta 591, 616
 Chaghri Beg 379
 chain of narrators (*sanad, isnād*) 630, 636
 Chalcedon, Council of 134
 Chalkis, Syria *see* Qinnasrīn
 chamberlain *see* *ḥājib*
 change; early Muslims as accelerating existing
 processes 8, 600–1
 charities 277, 619
 Charlemagne, Holy Roman emperor 281, 303
 Charles Martel, king of Franks xxiv, 232, 589
 cheques (*suftāja*) 649
 chess 126
 chiefs, tribal *see* *ashrāf*
 China 49, 102, 284, 501–2
 elite burials 680
 Marwānid embassy 238, 240
 and Muslim advance 239, 454, 457; defeat at
 Talas river 457–8, 684
 and Sasanians 67, 454, 679
 trade 680–1, 682
 Chorasnia *see* Khwārazm
 Christians and Christianity
 ‘Abd al-Malik and 520–1, 522
 administrative work: barred from state 334,
 522; bishops’ role in local 43, 95, 515
 ‘Anjar built by 249
 apologetics 523
 caliphal authority grounded in
 traditions 686
 in cities 42, 43, 44, 670; bishops’ role 43,
 95, 515
 Coptic 544, 545, 571–2; *History of the Coptic*
 patriarchs of Alexandria 541–2, 543;
 monasticism 549, 554, 556; patriarchate
 542–3, 544, 551
 councils of Church 134, 587
 and heresy 80–1
 Iconoclast Controversy 522–3
 iconography on coins 517, 652, 653, Pl. 16.2
 Jarrāhīds 334
 justice and 515, 522
 in Khūzistān 105, 132, 460
 language use: Arabic 535; Greek 533; Syriac
 510, 533, 535, 540
 marriage to Muslims 586–7
 martyrs 101, 609
 millennarianism 575
 Monophysite 95, 130, 132, 510, 515, 533; *see also*
 Coptic *above*
 Mosul *shahārija*, local gentry 243–4
 Muḥammad and 184, 223
 Nestorian 134, 138, 179, 510, 515, 535; Sasanian
 patronage 95, 130, 132, 133, 134
 persecutions: Muslim 460, 575–6, 609;
 Roman, of non-Chalcedonians 95, 130,
 132, 133, 134, 510; Sasanian 109, 116, 132,
 133, 134
 polemic 175
 prophetic figures 181
 Qur’ān’s Syriac Christian substrate 181–2
 restrictions under Islamic rule 299, 307, 575
 in Roman empire xxii, 78–9, 80–1, 82, 510
 in Sasanian empire 101–2, 105, 126–7, 130,
 131–2, 133–4; patronage of anti-
 Chalcedonians 95, 130, 132, 133, 134;
 persecution 109, 116, 132, 133, 134

Index

- Christians and Christianity (cont.)
 as slaves: 611
 symbolic impact of Muslim rule 515–16,
 520–1
 wealth 199, 512, 515
 in Yemen 178–9, 415
see also bishops; Cross; *dhimma*;
 monasticism; *and under* Africa, North;
 al-Andalus; Arabia; Egypt; Islam;
 Syria; taxation
- chronicles
 Agapius of Manbij 355
 of Arbela 101
 Ghaznavid 375
History of the caliphs 252
 Joshua the Stylite 95, 102
 on Kayanids 115
 Latin language, in Spain 587
 Marwānid period 252
 scholarly approaches 634, 460
 of Se'ert 101–2
 Sunnī, and Ismā'īlism 325
 Syriac 101–2
- chronology xxi, xxii–xxv
 Sasanian 100, 102
- church buildings 199, 522, 608
 Egypt 554, 575
 Late Antiquity 42, 508, 521, 670
 post-conquest construction 179, 515, 530, 554
 Syria 508, 514–15, 521, 522, 530
see also Jerusalem (Church of the Holy
 Sepulchre)
- Cilicia 28, 529, 539, 564–5
 Ṭūlūnid rule 560, 561; ended 561, 566
- Cilician Gates 28
- cities and towns 670–8, 682
 in Bedouin states 384, 385–6
 ceremonial routes through 674
 Church and 42, 43, 44, 670; bishops'
 leadership 43, 95, 515
 classical; decline of structures 41–2, 670–1
 coinage in urban life 648, 650, 653
 commercial centres 12, 41, 45, 47, 48, 58
 and countryside 12, 39, 40, 41, 45, 47, 612–13;
 agricultural hinterlands 50, 450;
 Sasanian transfers of population into
 cities 40, 48–9, 53, 54, 55–7
 development processes 41
 elites in Late Antique 12, 43, 46, 52, 53
 food supplies 33, 61, 450
 fortified centres replace 42–3, 45
 foundation stories 1–2, 8
 garrison towns develop into 251–2
 gates 7, 273
 governors' residences 54, 673, 674, 682; in
 Kufa 665–6, 667
 growth of early Islamic 31, 461
 industrial zones 675
 irrigation schemes stimulate growth 33–4
 under al-Ma'mūn 482
 Marwānid period 248
 Māzyār and 482, 483
 military quarters 297, 321, 604, 675–8
 military role 41; of Sasanian 48, 50, 51
 mosques in 673–4, 682
 plans: 674–8; classical 671, 672, 682; circular
 48, 105, (Baghdad) 7, 272–3, 674, 691;
 Sasanian 48, 53–4, 105; Syrian 53
 regional variation in development 44–5
 secondary towns replace cities 45, 64
 Sufism in urban life 351
 walls 42, 276, 604
 western; relative importance of coastal and
 inland 601–2
see also under administration; Roman/
 Byzantine empire; Sasanian empire;
 water supplies
- citizenship, Roman universal 81
- civil wars *see* al-Amīn (civil war against
 al-Ma'mūn); *fitna*
- classical learning, Graeco-Roman 291, 688
- Claudius I, Roman emperor 74
- Claudius II, Roman emperor 77
- client states, 'Abbāsīd rule through 685
- climate 19, 22–5, 29, 55, 70
- Coimbra 232
- coinage 648
 absolute price 649, 650, 651
 for army pay 61, 68–9, 107
 bronze 36
 Byzantine 211, 517, 651–3, 657, 663; imitations
 211, 212
 centralisation 211–12, 653, 656–7, 659
 copper 652–3, 660, 662, 663; legal status 651,
 656, 658
 dating 648, 654, Pl. 16.7
 debasement of silver 661, 662, 663, Pl. 16.39
 fragmentation for small change 660–1
 gold-based, introduced by Constantine
 78–80
 as historical source 4, 648–51, 658, 660,
 Pl. 16.20; on Sasanians 5, 48, 106–7
 hoards 199, 603, 681, 682
 iconography: Christian 517, 652, 653, Pl. 16.2;
 Islamic 220, 654–6; Sasanian 106, 118,
 211, 653, 654

Index

- imitations, cast 211, 212, 653, 654, 658, Pl. 16.21
 and law 650–1, 656, 658, 661, 663
 legends 648–9; *bism allāh* 654, 665; honorific
 titles 660, Pls. 16.28, 16.31, 16.32;
 Islamic 220, 520, 654–6; *al-mashriq* 448,
 474; Middle Persian, on Muslim coins
 211; *risāla* 656; scripts 659; *shahāda* 217,
 654–5, 656, 665; title *amīr al-mu'minūn*
 665; viziers' *laqabs* 660, Pl. 16.27; *see*
also names inscribed on *below*
- local production 658, Pls. 16.18–21
 metal content 649
 Muslim, by period: to Umayyad reform
 211–12, 651–6; early and middle
 'Abbāsid 470, 656–8, 659–61; eleventh-
 century 662–3; eleventh–thirteenth-
 century 663
- names inscribed on: absence 656, 659;
 governors' 648, 654, 657; of heirs
 apparent 659; of mints 648; of
 Muḥammad 654–5, 665, Pl. 16.9; rulers'
 316–17, 648, 649, 657–8, 659–60, Pls.
 16.16, 16.17, 16.24
- petty 650; *see also* copper *above*
 precious metal 649–50
ribā (excessive profit) prohibited
 650, 661
 supply and demand 650
 tokens possibly used in place of 662–3,
 Pl. 16.38
 validating marks 653, 654, Pls. 16.5, 16.6
 value 649; price ratio, high-/low-value 650
 weight, circulation by 660–1
see also under individual rulers and states
- collaboration *see under* conquests, Muslim
 Cologne Mani Codex 102
comitatenses (Roman troops) 87
 Commagene 89
 commerce
 across boundaries 58–9, 66
 cities as centres 47, 58, 674
 in Late Antiquity 47, 58–70
see also trade
- commonwealth, Islamic 13–14, 358–9,
 361–2, 685
 communications *see* roads; routes; shipping;
 transport
- Companions of the Prophet 167, 400, 516, 575,
 689–90
 high status 404–5, 416, 440
 conquests, Muslim 195–202
 administration of early 200, 209, 214
 'Arab conquests' as misnomer 645–6
- armies: composition 383, 399, 416, 432, 512,
 645–6, *see also* Basra and Kūfa
 (conquests by forces from); size and
 capabilities 113, 197–8; *see also* garrison
 towns
- booty 199–200, 201, 208, 209
 and Christianity; symbolic impact 515–16
 collaboration of local populations 198, 456,
 457, 462–3; al-Andalus 198, 581, 586–8;
 Iran 461, 462–3
- conquered peoples' experience of 198–9,
 201–2, 460–1, 510–11
- continuities from pre-conquest systems
 198–9, 463, 514, 684
- cultural influences on Islam 224–5
- economic effects 63, 70–1, 167, 198–200, 684
 and elites 70–1, 198, 512, 587–8
- events 195–7
- extent 12, 175, 684
 and Islamic community's survival 194–5, 684
- leadership 113, 512, 684
- modern scholarship 631, 636, 643
- Muḥammad's campaigns initiate 192–3, 195
- religious interpretation of success 200–2, 510
- religious motivation 113, 174, 175, 645–6
- and settled peoples' ascendancy over
 nomads 160
- sources 197, 628, 629–30
- speed 70, 684
- treaties 192
- see also* Muslim conquest(s) *under individual*
regions, and under Roman/Byzantine
 empire; Sasanian empire
- Conrad, Lawrence I. 636
- consensus 294, 637, 692–4
- Constans II, Roman emperor 210, 514
 coinage 211, 652, Pl. 16.2; Muslim imitations
 211, 212
- Constantia, Mesopotamia 134–5
- Constantine I, Roman emperor xxii, 78–80, 81
- Constantine IV, Roman emperor 210
- Constantine V, Roman emperor 235, 529, 530–1
- Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus, Roman
 emperor 124
- Constantinople 28–9, 78–9, 79–80, 279, 302
 failed sieges: Avar/Persian 88, 111, 139;
 Muslim xxiii, 235, 530
- food supply 33, 61
- mint 652
- Constantius II, Roman emperor 81–2, 141n2
- Constitution of Medina 157, 188–90
- continuities *see under* conquests, Muslim; Late
 Antiquity

Index

- contractors, state 63
 contracts, models of notarial documents for 619
 conversion to Islam *see* Islamisation
 Cook, Michael 632, 641, 643
 copper 36
 see also under coinage
 Copts 249, 546–7, 548, 553–6, 576
 demography 553–6, 572, 580
 language 541
 literature 95, 102
 revolts 243, 550, 551, 553
 see also Christians and Christianity (Coptic)
 Cordoba 231–2, 602–3, 605
 Berber revolt and 233–4, 591
 Christianity 587, 609
 factional struggles 621
 Madīnat al-Zahrā' 605, 620, 621
 mosque 602, 674
 Muslim conquest 585
 Umayyad capital 303, 605, 618–19
 corruption 357–8, 620
 corvéés 249
 cosmology 273
 cotton 31, 572, 670
 countryside 512, 666–70
 see also agriculture; land; peasants; *quṣūr*;
 villages; *and under* cities and towns
 courts
 caliphal 300, 308, 348, 350, 667; ceremonial
 280, 298; move from Hijāz 400; at
 Samarra' 297, 300
 in Egypt 548
 Ghaznavid 377–8
 hierarchy 117, 308
 see also under Sasanian empire
 craftsmen 129, 555, 602–3, 650
 credit 61
 Crete 197, 568, 611
 Crone, Patricia 632, 641, 643
 Cross 178
 relic of True xxiii, 94, 111, 139, 193
 Ctesiphon *see* al-Madā'in
 culture, high
 Arabic-language 161, 361, 369, 375, 494
 empire building and 12
 al-Ma'mūn's synthesis 291
 Marwānid 226, 234, 249–53
 political diversity and 13, 15, 387
 *see also individual genres, and under individual
 states and rulers*
 curial order 43
cursus publicus 26, 61
 Cyprus 197, 235, 236, 514, 568
 Cyrenaica *see* Barqa
 Cyrus, bishop of Phasis, Orthodox Melkite
 patriarch of Alexandria ('al-
 Muqawqas') 543
 al-Da'ār, Banū 427
 al-Ḍabbī, al-Musayyab ibn Zuhayr 274
 Dabīl (Dvin) 236, Pl. 16.17
 Dābūyids 479–80
 al-Ḍaḥḥāk ibn Qays al-Fihri 215, 216, 259–60
 al-Ḍaḥḥāk ibn Qays al-Shaybānī 325
 Dāhir, ruler of Sind 240
dā'īs see Ismā'īliyya (*da'wa*)
 Dajjāl (apocalyptic figure) 617
 Damascus
 and 'Abbāsīd revolution 265, 266, 528
 under 'Abbāsīd rule 322, 384, 528, 532, 566;
 al-Mutawakkil tries to make capital
 299, 308; Qarmāṭi attacks 336, 338,
 446, 536
 archaeology 664
 Church of St John the Baptist 521
 coinage: Ayyūbid 663; Umayyad/early
 'Abbāsīd 653, 656, 657, Pls. 16.6, 16.10;
 Zangid Pl. 16.40
 Fātimid control 569, 570, 573, 578
 in first *fitna* 204
 hinterland and economy 516–17
 Islamisation 532
 jund 242, 592
 in Late Antiquity 508, 540
 Mu'āwiya's palace 210, 518
 Muslim conquest 196, 512
 routes 28, 516
 'ulamā' 322
 Umayyad capital 209–10, 400, 516–17, 518, 527
 Umayyad Mosque 227, 257, 521, 674
 wealth 199
 Damāwand, *maṣmughān* of 479, 480
 Dāmghān plain 49
 dams 106, 129, 400, 669
 Dandānqān, battle of 380, 505
 Daniel, Book of 202
 Danube frontier 29, 63
 Daqīqī 503
dār al-islām 230
 see also Islamic empire
 Dār al-Mudhahhab palace 548
 Dara, Kayanid king of Iran 147
 Dara, Mesopotamia 27, 85–6, 134–5, 136
 Dārābjird 452
 coinage minted at 211, Pls. 16.7, 16.8

Index

- al-Darazī 576, 578
 Darb Zubayda (pilgrimage road) 280–1,
 669, 680
 Darband 28, 462
 Ḍariyya 439
 Daskhurants'i, Movses 102
 Dastgerd 139
 dates (fruit) 32, 159
 dating systems xxi, 654, Pl. 16.7
da'wa
 'Abbāsīd 261–3, 266, 302, 464
see also under Ismā'īliyya
dawla
 'Abbāsīd revolution xxiv, 206, 255, 261–5, 527
 dynasty, element in titles 364, 365, 372, 373
 Fātimīd state 571–2
 Day of Thirst xxiv, 239
 Daybul 28, 240
 Daylam and Daylamites 28, 280, 388, 452,
 479, 484
 Būyids and 346–8, 368, 369
 and Kurds 380, 382
 mercenary infantry abroad 6, 346–7, 364,
 538, 573, 577, 694; in Būyid armies 368,
 369; states founded by 347–8
 Dayr al-'Āqūl, battle of 316, 323, 495–6
 Decapolis 45
 decorative arts 667
 Sāmarrān bevelled style 298
 Sasanian 105, 106, 118, 128, 132, 140
 Dedan (al-'Ola) 20
 defences
 Sasanian 67, 112, 197
see also fortifications
 deity *see* divinity, God
 demography 31, 71, 248–9, 686
 Egypt 553–6, 572, 580
 Denia 621
 Denmark 681
 deportations
 Sasanian 28, 48, 54, 64–5, 66, 105–6, 129, 130
 by al-Walīd I 249
see also population (transfers)
Déscription de l'Égypte 627
 desert castles *see* *qasūr*
 Dhi 'l-Nūn, Banū 621
dhimma (protected status) 464, 571, 686
 Dhu 'l-Riyāsatayn ('Alī ibn Ja'far ibn Falāh) *see*
 al-Faql ibn Sahl
 Dhū al-Hijja (the month of the pilgrimage) xxi
 Dhū Jibla 428
 Dhū Nuwās 179
 Dhubyān tribe 430
 Dhukā al-Rūmī 564
 diet 31, 32, 575
dihqāns 51–2, 54, 122, 344–5, 463, 474, 497,
 498, 503
 as tax-agents 470
 Dihyā ibn Muṣab 552
 Dimashq (sub-province of Syria) 517
 Dīnār, 'king' of Media 452
 Dinaric Alps 22
 Diocletian, Roman emperor xxii
 administrative reforms xxii, 78, 79, 81, 82
 and Sasanians xxii, 81, 82, 89, 108
 Dionysius of Tell Mahrē 533, 535
 diplomacy
 Arab world 174
 Roman–Sasanian xxii, 84, 86, 108, 109, 135,
 136, 140–2, 149
 Western, modern 627
 disasters, natural 31, 55
 Ditch, battle of the 191
 divinity
 Iranian kings and 104, 105, 114, 118, 273
 al-Muqanna's claims to 477, 478
see also God
diwāns (administrative bureaux) 208, 332,
 333, 334
 in Egypt 243, 561, 567
 first, to redistribute conquest booty 199–200
 Ghaznavid 375
ḍiyā' ('estate' lands) 312, 352–3
 Diyālā basin 21, 39–40, 49, 64
 irrigation 34, 48, 55, 64, 669–70
 Diyarbakr *see* Amida
 al-Dizbirī 578
 Djat people 517
 donatives, caliphal 310, 349
 donkey, the man with the (Abū Yazīd
 Makhlad ibn Kaydad) 342, 567, 617
 Donner, Fred M. 636, 643
 Dorylaeum 235
 dress, distinctive Jewish and Christian 575
 droughts 56, 121–2
 Druzes 578
 dualism 254
 Dulafids 336, 355, 458, Pl. 16.26
 Dūmat al-Jandal 192
 Ḍumayr (*qasr*) 666–7
 Dunbāwand 462
 al-Dūr 678
 Dura-Europos 53
 Dürres (Dyrrhachion) 29
 Durzān, Fātimīd queen mother 573
dux Mesopotamiae 134–5

Index

- Dvīn (Dabīl) 236, 382
 dyeing 129
 dynastic states, on periphery 313–22, 339–48,
 358, 360–1, 489–505, 685
 coinage 659–60
 of Daylamī mercenary commanders 347–8
 and Islam 295, 325, 361, 466
 khutba in name of regional rulers 660
 in Maghrib 593–600
 and towns 384, 385
 types 358
 see also individual states and dynasties,
 especially Aghlabids; al-Andalus
 (UMAYYAD STATE); Būyids;
 Fāṭimids; Ghaznavids; Ṣaffārids;
 Sāmānids; Ṭāhirids; Ṭūlunids
- Dyrrhachion (Dürres) 29
- earthquakes 198, 278, 515
- east, Islamic 448–505
 administrative structure 242, 467
 Arab settlers 458–61
 concept 448–9
 dynamic and defensive frontiers 467–8
 governors 466, 492, 654; al-Ḥajjāj 228, 244;
 Ṭāhir ibn al-Ḥusayn 475
 histories 458, 466
 Islam as domestic cultural identity 295
 landscape 21
 languages 466
 map xxxiv
 Muslim conquests 449–58, 460–1
 political development 466–89
 political history 468, 469–79
 regional dynasties 489–505; *see also Ṣaffārids;*
 Sāmānids; Ṭāhirids
 regionalism 449, 458–67, 475
 religious tendencies 459–60, 484
 revolutionary movements 475–9
 routes 468, 485, 495
 sources 449–50, 458, 460–1, 466
 taxation 466, 473, 474; protests 486, 487,
 488, 489
 see also individual regions; peoples, states and
 dynasties
- Ebro valley 342–3
- economy
 coinage as evidence 649–51
 crisis of tenth century 360, 661
 Marwānid 226, 244–9
 plague affects 63
 self-sufficiency relatively unusual 59
 and state 12–13, 37–8, 60–2
 see also individual products; agriculture;
 commerce; craftsmen; land; taxation;
 trade; and under conquests, Muslim;
 Late Antiquity; warfare; and individual
 states and regions
- Edessa (Ruhā) xxii, 89, 136, 199
 Christianity 132, 532; great church 515, 521
 routes 27
- education
 of Muslim scribes 333
 under Sasanians 116, 132
 see also schools; universities
- egalitarianism, radical social 207–8, 476
- Egypt xxiii, 541–80
 ʿAbbāsids and 275, 306, 335–6, 340, 550, 575,
 578; governors 287, 321, 542, 557; under
 al-Maʿmūn 276, 286, 287, 290, 492;
 religious policies 294, 550–1, 555
 administration 209, 544–5, 555, 560–1, 567;
 ʿAbbāsīd 275, 287, 321, 335, 338–9, 542,
 557; Fāṭimīd 569, 574, 576–7; language
 use 242, 541, 545, 549, 553–6; Umayyad
 242, 243, 548–9
 agriculture 30–1, 32, 34–5, 246, 541, 572;
 administration 544–5, 556; land-tax 545,
 549–50; Umayyad revenue from 226,
 319, 360, 684; *see also food supply below*
 aṃsar 70, 550; *see also Fuṣṭāṭ*
 Arab population 447, 546, 550–3, 557, 568, 577
 army 233, 234, 331, 546, 577, 579; Coptic
 conscripts 546–7, 550; factionalism 552,
 573; Fāṭimīd 573; *ghilmān* 560, 566, 573,
 577; lkshīdīd household regiments
 567, 569; privileges of *jund* 546, 549,
 550, 552, 553, 558; Ṭūlunīd 320, 321, 560,
 563, 573, 577
 ashraf 569, 570
 Barqa (Cyrenaica) annexed to 544
 and Byzantium: Christological disputes
 542–3; warfare 514, 547
 and caliphate of Medina 547
 Christianity 541–2, 568, 575–6; church
 buildings 554, 575; conflict with
 Byzantium over 542–3; *see also*
 Christians and Christianity (Coptic);
 Copts
 cities 44; *see also individual names*
 coinage 245, 560, 657; Fāṭimīd 661, 662–3,
 Pl. 16.36
 Copts *see separate entry*
 court life 548
 demography 553–6, 572, 580
 economy 245, 572–3

Index

- finance 335, 338–9; *see also* taxation *below*
 food supply 29; famines 568, 569, 580; Ḥijāz
 supplied from 271, 399, 400, 411; to
 Rome and Constantinople 61, 63
 genealogy of rulers 562
 geography 541
 and Ḥijāz 402, 411–12, 428, 547; food supply
 271, 399, 400, 411; protection of holy
 places 410, 566, 568
 Ibn al-Zubayr's rule 216–17
 irrigation 20, 243, 541, 544–5
 Islamisation 243, 319, 541, 550–1, 553–6, 558, 580
 Jews 572, 575
 justice 571–2
 landscape 19–20
 languages 242, 541, 545, 549, 553–6
 Manichaeism 102
 map xxxvi
 mines 302, 557, 559
 Muslim conquest 196, 542–7
 navy 544, 564–5, 568, 577
 and Nubia 541, 547, 566, 574; incursions from
 302, 568
 palaces 548
 Palmyrene rule over 77
 papyri 62, 212–13, 243, 542
 pastoralism 30
 population 39
 qāḍī 542, 560, 571–2
 Qarmāḥī invasions 336, 338, 444, 445, 446,
 569–70
 routes to Indian Ocean 541, 572
 Saljūqs in 578, 579
 Sasanian occupation 86, 88, 93–4, 100, 111, 138
 scholars 319
 Shī'ite revolts 558
 slavery 546
 social organisation 243, 544–5
 sources 325, 331–2, 541–2, 575
 and Sudan 541
 and Syria 384, 535–6, 541; Fāṭimid campaigns
 384, 569–70, 573, 575, 577–8, (and
 Aleppo) 539, 574, 578, 579
 taxation 243, 544–5, 548–9, 561;
 administration 212–13, 219, 551, 558, 559,
 577; central government's use 31, 319,
 340, 517, 524, 551, 557; Copts and 544,
 548, 550, 551; farming 557, 563, 572, 577;
 revolts 276, 552
 textiles 572
 trade 62, 572, 573, 662, 678
 under Umayyads 219, 243, 524, 547–50;
 under Marwān II xxiv, 260, 263, 264–5
 villages 544–5, 557
 and Yemen 427, 428, 429
see also individual cities; Ikhshīdids;
 Ṭulūnids; *and under* Fāṭimids
 Elburz mountains 21, 36, 68
 electoral conclave *see* *shūrā*
 elephant, year of the 183–4
 elephants, war 374, 375
 elites
 Būyids and local 370
 and empire building 12
 Kurdish 381
 and local government 79–80, 243–4
 Marwānid period 219, 249–53
see also Abnā'; aristocracy; *ashrāf*; notables;
and under Arabs; China; cities and
 towns; conquests, Muslim; Ḥijāz;
 Roman/Byzantine empire; Sasanian
 empire
 Elvira 592
 embezzlement *see* *muṣādara*
 emerald mining, Aswan 557
 Emesa *see* Homs
 'Emigrants' *see* *muhājirūn*
 empire, Islamic *see* Islamic empire
 enclaves, sacred 423, 425
 Enlightenment scholarship 626–8
 entertainments, decline of theatrical 670
 environment
 physical and strategic 10, 19–36; *see also*
 climate; land; landscape; resources;
 roads; routes
 social 37–70; *see also* cities and towns;
 demography; exchange; markets;
 population; taxation; trade; villages
 Ephesus 28–9
 Council of 134
 eras
 Islamic 173
 Sasanian 100, 143
 eschatology *see* apocalyptic; Judgment, Final;
 Mahdism and the *mahdī*; messianic
 beliefs; millenarianism
 Esna 558
 estates 33, 35, 245–6
ḍiyā' 312, 352–3
 Ḥijāzī elites' 57–8
 Roman villa-type 45
 Sasanian 46, 119
 taxation 312
 Ethiopia (kingdom of Aksum) 57, 58
 invasions of Arabia 111, 179, 183,
 406, 428

Index

- ethnicity 177–8, 267–8, 275, 460, 487
 Berber revolt and 233
 religion and 177–8, 534; Islamic 224–5, 267–8,
 460, 470–1
see also Arabs; Iran (cultural identity)
- Euchaita 44
- Euphrates river and valley 20–1, 27–8, 34, 112
- Europe 44, 341
see also Carolingian empire; *individual countries*; *and under* trade
- Eusebius of Caesarea 509
- Eutychius (Saʿīd ibn Baṭrīq) 541–2, 543
- events, table of major xxii–xxv
- exceptionalism, Islamic 175–6
- exchange 32, 41, 47
see also markets; trade
- executions, public 338
- extortion 351
see also *muṣādāra*
- fabes; *Panchatantra* 127
- factionalism 370, 456–7
 ʿAbbāsīd period 313, 333–4, 349–50, 352; in
 bureaucracy 323, 333–4, 349–50
 Marwanīd period 227, 241, 253, 256
see also under army; caliphal
- Fadak 20, 160, 399, 405
- al-Faḍl ibn Jaʿfar 565
- al-Faḍl ibn al-Rabīʿa 285
- al-Faḍl ibn Sahl (Dhu ʿl-Riyāsātayn) 285–6,
 474, 576
- Faḍl ibn Šālīḥ 529
- al-Faḍl ibn Yaḥyā al-Barmakī 281–2, 289, 473
- Fāʾīq, Sāmānīd chamberlain 372, 503, 504, 505
- fair at ʿUkāz 161
- Fakhr al-Dawla 366, 367
- al-Fallaḥī 578
- famines 121–2, 367–8, 568, 569, 580
- al-Farabī, Abū Naṣr 537–8, 638
- Farāghina (free soldiers from Central Asia) 309
- Farghāna 240, 344, 378, 457, 492, 498
 Qutayba ibn Muslim’s campaigns 238, 457
- Farīgūnīds of Juzjān 500
- Fāris, Āl 427
- Farrukhshah family 285
- Farrukhān, ruler of Ṭabaristān 452, 462, 479
- Fārs 467
 ʿAbbāsīd rule 275, 336, 337
 Azraqī principality 459–60, 487
 Būyīd principality 348, 364–5, 366–7, 368, 370
 cities 48, 50
 economy 35, 48, 50, 64
 Muslim conquest 450–1, 452–3
- religion 361, 465
 revolt (39/659–60) 454–5
 roads 26
 Šaffarīd control 316, 336, 337, 495, 496, 497
- Fāryāb 454
- Fasā 452
- fasting 189
- fatāwā* (sing. *fatwā*) 503, 615
 Andalusian compilations 619
- al-Faḥḥ ibn Khāqān 305, 308
- Faṭīma 188
 tomb of 390
- Faṭīmīds 327–32, 358, 570–2
 caliphate: genealogies 188, 265, 562; hardens
 sectarian divisions 390, 393;
 legitimisation 614–15; origins 329–32;
 proclamation xxv, 330, 613, 615;
 removal to Egypt 574, 618
- daʿwa* 571, 575, 578
- dawla* 340–2, 571–2
- khuṭba* 574
- Mahdist aims 570–2, 616
 origins and rise 325, 327–32
 state formation 330–1, 358, 694
- IN EGYPT 562, 567–80
 and *ashraf* 569, 570
 campaigns and conquest 339, 340–1,
 563–5, 567–70, 618
 coinage 661, 662–3, Pl. 36
 economy 572–3
 famine 568, 569
 and Hijāz 402, 411–12, 428
 modern scholarship and 331–2, 638, 641
 patrimonial state 574–80
 and Qarāmiṭa 444, 445, 446, 569–70
 sources 325, 331–2, 575
 and Sunnism 14–15, 575
 Syrian campaigns 384, 569–70, 573, 575,
 577–8; and Aleppo 539, 573–4, 578, 579
 taxation 577
 trade 572, 573, 662
 and ʿUqaylīds 386
 women of royal family 576, 578
 and Yemen 427, 428, 429
- IN IFRĪQIYA 340–2, 358, 567–8
 administration 330–1
 and al-Andalus 343, 616–17
 army 331
 caliphate proclaimed in xxv, 330, 613, 615
 conquests: Aghlabīd state 319, 330, 340,
 613, 615; Egypt 339, 340–1, 563–5,
 567–70, 618; Rustamīds and Idrīsīds
 616; Sicily 341

Index

- legitimation 614–15
 and *Maghrib al-aqṣā* 616
 prosperity 341
 religious groups 341, 342
 state formation 330–1, 358, 694
 taxation 330–1
 trade 341
see also individual caliphs
 ‘Faṭimids’, al-Ḥusayn ibn Zikrawayh’s fighters
 known as 338
fatwās see fatāwā
 Fayrūz, governor of Yemen 417
 Fayyūm 246, 340
 Fazāra tribe 160–1
 Fertile Crescent xxiii, 9, 194, 447
see also individual regions
 Fez 304, 599, 601, 603–4
 Fāṭimid conquest 343, 616, 617
see also Idrīsids
 festivals, Islamic 388–9, 391
 Fiḥl, battle of 196, 512
 Filasṭīn 228, 257, 259, 517
 al-Ramla as capital 242, 248
 finance
 church 199, 512, 515
 coinage; high-value, for state finance 649–50
 privy purse 334
 in successor states 363
see also donatives; iqtā’āt; taxation; and
under armies; army, caliphal; Egypt;
Ghaznavids; al-Manṣūr, Abū Ja’far;
Roman/Byzantine empire
fiqh see jurisprudence
 Firdawsī 115, 124, 133, 149, 150
 Firūz, king of Persia 84–5, 134, 152
 Hepthalite wars 109, 121, 134
 Firūz, son of Yazdegerd III 454
 Firūzābād 49, 105
 fiscal matters *see* taxation
fitnas (civil wars)
 first 94, 202–5, 214–15, 406, 516; provinces
 during 417, 432, 441, 454, 516; sources
 and scholarship 629–30, 631
 second xxiii, 215–17, 518–19, 547–8; ‘Abd al-
 Malik and 215, 221; and elite 205,
 214–15; and Hijāz 405; provinces in
 417–18, 441, 456; Shī’ism and Khārijism
 in 205, 207
 third 229–30, 255–8, 519
 fifth 310–11
 sources on 628, 629–30
 al-Fityawn, Arab Jewish king of Zuhra 168
federati (Roman troops) 87
 Followers (of the Prophet’s Companions)
 689–90
 food supply 33, 160–1, 246, 450
 Rome and Constantinople 33, 61
see also famines; grain; and under Egypt;
 Hijāz
 forests 25, 29, 35
 fortifications
 Arabian pre-Islamic dwellings 678
 Roman 74, 89
 Sāmānid 344
 Syrian northern corridor 27
see also fortresses; ribāṭs; walls; defensive
 fortresses
 Andalusian *ḥuṣūn* 612
 Cilicia and Taurus 529
 al-Muqanna‘*s*, at Sanām 477
 Sāmānid 344
 Sasanian 51, 67
 Syrian 27
 foundation stories 1–2, 8
 four-caliph theory 392, 690, 692, 693
 Fowden, Garth 643
 fragmentation of Islamic state 13–15, 306–7,
 685, 694–5
see also regionalism
 France 232, 589, 612
 Fredon (mythical Iranian ruler) 146
 frescoes 250–1, 298
 Friday prayers *see khuṭba*
 frontier districts 279, 332, 344, 467–8, 695
 dynastic states 313–22, 358, 493; Ghaznavids
 379; Ḥamdānids 355; Sāmānids 344; *see*
 also al-‘Awāṣim; Thughūr; and under
 al-Andalus; Roman/Byzantine empire
 fruit production 29–30, 32, 159
 al-Furāt, Banū 333–4, 565, 567
furū‘ al-fiqh 532
 Fustaṭ 196, 243, 546, 556, 569
 archaeology 672–3, 678, 679–80
 Coptic community 555
 Geniza documents 572
 Mosque of ‘Amr 546, 548, 564, 575
 Qarāmiṭa defeated at 569–70
 religious learning 304
 trade and commerce 304, 679–80
 Ṭūlūnid surrender to ‘Abbāsids 338
 unrest 557, 576
 Futūḥ 569
 Gabriel, angel 185
 Galerius, Roman Caesar 81, 82
 Galicia, Spain 232

Index

- Gallienus, Roman emperor 77
 games 125, 126
 Ganja 382
 Ganzak, sack of 65
 gardens 559
 garrison towns (*amṣār*, sing. *miṣr*) 70, 205, 512,
 672–3, 682
 cities develop from 196, 251–2
 and contacts with non-Arabs 224, 457
 in east 455, 456, 458–9
 see also individual cities, especially Baṣra;
 Fuṣṭāt; Kūfa; al-Rāfiqa
 garum 62–3
 Gaul, southern 232
 Gaza, battle of 512
 gems, Sasanian carved 118
 genealogy
 Arab 153, 154–5, 157, 629
 Sasanian 121, 132
 Geniza, Fuṣṭāt 572
 gentry *see* elites; notables
 geographers 132–3, 501–2, 610, 629
 geography, influence of 10, 13, 70, 71
 George Syncellus 534
 Georgia 236
 Gepids 83–4
 Gerasa (Jerash) 64, 508, 533
 Germanikeia 28
 Germany 75, 343
 Ghadīr Khumm, Shīʿite festival of 389
 Ghalbūn, governor of Ashmunayn 566
 Gharchiṣṭān 372
 Ghassān ibn ʿAbbād 498
 Ghassānids 91–3, 96, 135, 164
 Christianity 92–3, 178, 510
 Ghāṭafān (tribe) 154
ghayba see occultation
 Ghaylān ibn Salama 166
 Ghaylān al-Dimashqī 257
 Ghaylāniyya 256–7, 258
ghāzīs (fighters for the faith) 317, 499
 on Byzantine frontier 531–2, 538
 caliphs 279, 335, 342, 529, 531
 Ghaznavids 370, 375–6
 religious scholars 344, 531–2
 Sayf al-Dawla 355, 538
 Ghazna 371–3, 377, 504
 see also Ghaznavids
 Ghaznavids 370–80, 505
 and ʿAbbāsids 363, 373
 administration 345–6, 363, 371, 372, 375, 507
 and Afghanistan 372, 376, 380, 505
 army 371, 374, 375, 377
 and Būyids 367, 370
 chronicles 375
 coinage 372, 662, Pl. 16.33
 court 377–8
 culture: Arabic 375; Persian 369, 371,
 375, 505
 finance 363, 371, 376; booty 371, 376–7
 as *ghāzīs* 370, 375–6
 ghulām-based state 370, 371, 375, 377–8
 and Ḥijāz 411
 Indian conquests 363, 370, 376, 378, 380, 505;
 and Hinduism 370, 374, 376, 377
 jihād 370, 376, 695
 Khurāsān under xxv, 378
 and Khwārazm 378–9
 land 371
 legitimation 373, 375–6, 377, 695
 Persian culture 369, 371, 375, 505
 and Qarakhānids 373–4, 378–9
 and Saljūqs 379–80, 505
 Sunnism 370
 taxation 371, 376
 and Transoxania 378–9
 Turkish ethnicity 371, 505
 see also Alptegin; Maḥmūd of Ghazna;
 Sebüktegin
 Ghifār tribe 154
ghulām (pl. *ghilmān*, professional soldiers), and
 ghulām-based states 363
 Būyids 363, 368, 370, 386
 Egypt 560, 566, 573, 577
 Ghaznavids 370, 371, 375, 377–8
 taxation 386
ghulāt (heterodox) movements 254, 269
 Ghūr 372, 485
 Ghuzz Turkmen 370, 379, 382–3, 387
 frontier guards for Ghaznavids 379
 and Kurds 380–1, 387
 and ʿUqaylids 387
 Gibb, Sir Hamilton 639
 Gibbon, Edward 628, 629
 gifts
 from caliphs to elites 209, 405
 diplomatic 142, 149, 320
 Giza 340, 564
 glass 106, 246, 675, 676, 680, 682
 Gnosis 254, 272, 327
 goat-rearing 30, 35
 'goatskin waterbottle, man with the' (Abū
 Rakwa) 575
 God
 favour and disfavour 175, 200–2, 510
 pre-Islamic Arabian High God, Allah 161

Index

- tashbīh* (anthropomorphism) 293
see also divinity; monotheism
- Goeje, M. J. de 630
- gold 36, 57, 557
 African trade 572, 595, 604, 618, 662
 in Late Antiquity 66, 70–1, 106, 129, 201
 pre-coinage use in commerce 245
see also under coinage
- golden era, early ‘Abbāsīd period as 283–4, 306–7
- Goldziher, Ignaz 3, 631, 636
- Gordian III, Roman emperor 76, 105
- Goths xxii, 75, 82–4
- governors, provincial 241
 Abnā’ as 274
 caliphal power delegated to 686
 caliphs’ wariness of 241, 276
 civil and military authority 209
 coinage bears names 589, 648, 654, 657, Pl. 16.14
 hereditary 288–90
 independence of eastern 466
 and *iqṭā’* system 352
 residences 54, 673, 674, 682; in Kūfa 665–6, 667
 royal family members 288–90, 401, 408, 410, 419, 442, 528
 Sasanian 121, 164
 Sufyānid period 209
see also under individual provinces
- graffiti 210, 665
- grain 30, 32
 Beyşehir Occupation Phase 23
 production 29, 32, 34, 50, 63, 271
 Roman 27, 30, 61, 63
 Sasanian 29, 30
 transport 26–7, 63
- grammar 688
- Granada 621
- grapes 29–30
- Gratian, Roman emperor 81
- graves 602, 665
 veneration of ‘Alid 389–90
- Greek language
 administrative use 242, 509, 541, 545, 549
 Arabic translations from 638
 in Palmyra 76, 77
 in Syria 507, 509, 510, 533; Arabic supplants 508, 534–5, 540
- Gregorius, Byzantine exarch 583
- Gregory Abū al-Faraj (Bar Hebraeus) 535
- Greuthungi 82–3
- Guadalete, battle of 581, 585
- guards
 caliphal 210
 Egyptian regiments 567, 569
 provincial governors’ 241
- Gujarat 68, 240, 241, 460
- Gūr (Ardashīr Khwarrah) 105
- Gurgān *see* Jurjān
- Hadhbānī Kurds 381
- al-Hādī, caliph 270, 279–80, 284, 481
- al-Hādī ilā ‘l-Ḥaqq (Yaḥyā ibn al-Ḥusayn al-Ḥasanī, Zaydī imam) 327, 424–5, 427
- ḥadīth* and traditionalism 175, 252, 532, 629, 689–95
 ‘Abbāsīd caliphs and 283, 292–3, 299, 686–7
 in Ḥijāz 400, 413
 and *ra’y* 293–4, 686–7, 691–2
 in Sāmānid region 501
 on succession to Muḥammad 194
 Sunnī revival and 391–2, 393
 tradition-critical approach 631, 634, 636
 in Yemen 423
- Hadramawt 397, 414, 416, 419
 Abū Bakr’s campaigns 416
ḥawṭas (sacred enclosures) 423
 Ibādīyya 418, 419, 422–3, 434, 437
 Najda ibn ‘Amīr’s revolt 441
 and Oman 423
 Shāfi‘ism 424
 Ṣulayḥī conquest 423, 427
 Ṭālib al-Ḥaqq takes 418
 Yu‘firī control 422
 Ziyādī influence 421
- Hadrian I, Pope 587
- Ḥaḍūr 427
- Ḥafṣ ibn al-Walīd al-Ḥaḍramī 550
- hagiography 341, 463
- Hajar, Baḥrayn 158, 439
- hajar/hjiras* (protected areas and protected status) 423, 425
- ḥājib* (chamberlain) 308
 of al-Andalus 620, 621
- Ḥājib ibn Zurāra, bow of 155
- ḥajj* *see* pilgrimage
- Hajjāj, Banū 586
- al-Ḥajjāj ibn Yūsuf 228, 238–9, 252, 253
 coinage 656, Pl. 16.13
 governorships: Arabia 216, 403, 417, 432, 657; the east 238, 240, 244, 459, 464, 486, 487
- Ḥajr 154, 439
- al-Ḥakam I, Umayyad ruler of al-Andalus 597, 602–3, 607

Index

- al-Ḥakam II, Umayyad caliph of al-Andalus 597, 620
- al-Ḥakim, Fāṭimid caliph 386, 412, 573–6
- al-Ḥallāj, al-Ḥusayn ibn Manṣūr xxv, 350–1
 Hama 536, 562
- Hamadhān 28, 50, 264, 336, 366, 369
 Muslim conquest 452, 458
- Ḥamdān ibn al-Ash'ath (Ḥamdān Qarmatī) 328, 444, 536
- Hamdān tribal confederation 415
- Ḥamdānids (rulers of Aleppo) 354–5, 537–9, 540, 566
 and Būyids 367–8
 cultural patronage 355, 537–8, 694
 as frontier state 358
 and Ikhshīdids 566
 al-Jazīra under control 352
 and Mirdāsids 384
 in Mosul 355, 569, 694
 power base 382
 taxation 386
 and 'Uqayl 384, 386
 weakening of power 383
 see also Sayf al-Dawla
- Ḥamdawayh (Ibn Mahān) 420–1
- Ḥamid ibn al-'Abbās 350
- Ḥammād al-Barbarī 420
- Hammer-Purgstall, Joseph Freiherr von 627
- Ḥamza (Iranian preacher in Egypt) 576, 578
- Ḥamza ibn 'Abd Allāh (Ḥamza ibn 'Ādharak) 316, 325, 487–9, 492
- Ḥanafī school of law 346, 424, 460, 501, 606, 693
- Ḥanbalī school of law 295, 299, 307, 350, 693
- Ḥanīfa, Banū 439, 442
- ḥaniḥs* (pre-Islamic ascetics) 161, 180
- Hannād al-Sarī 486
- Hānsī, near Delhi 378
- Ḥanzala ibn Ṣafwān 592–3
- Harāt see Herat
- Ḥarb ibn Umayya 166–7, 213
- al-Ḥārith ibn Jabala (Arethas, Ghassānid) xxii, 92
- al-Ḥārith ibn al-Kharaj, Banū 163
- al-Ḥārith ibn Surayj 239, 464, 469
- al-Ḥarra, battle of 406
- Ḥarrān 27, 259, 384, 509, 527, 674
- Harthama ibn A'yān 283, 473, 474–5, 491, 552, 553
- Hārūn ibn Altūntāsh 379
- Hārūn ibn Khumārawayh, Ṭūlūnid 336, 561–2
- Hārūn ibn Muḥammad 409–10
- Hārūn al-Rashīd, caliph xxiv, 270, 279, 280–4, 473–4
 and 'Alids 282, 599
 and Arab and Iranian elements 282, 302
 and army 280
 and Barmakids 280, 281–2, 283
 and Byzantium 279, 281; campaigns 279, 280, 281, 290, 529, 531
 capital at al-Raḡqa xxiv, 275, 529
 coinage 657, 658, Pls. 16.14, 16.21
 corruption during reign 357
 and east 283, 473–4, 481, 488, 685
 foreign policy 281, 284, 434, 599–600, 685; see also and Byzantium above
 as *ghāzī*-caliph 335, 529, 531
 religious policies 278, 280–1, 283
 succession arrangements and crisis 279, 282–3, 284–6, 407, 473–4
 and Syria 529, 531
 Yemen under 419, 420
- al-Ḥasā 439
- Ḥasan, Ikhshīdid prince 569
- al-Ḥasan al-A'ṣam 446
- al-Ḥasan al-'Askarī, eleventh imam 326, 387–8, 563, 614
- Ḥasan al-Baṣrī 464
- al-Ḥasan ibn Abī al-Hayjā' see Nāṣir al-Dawla
- al-Ḥasan ibn 'Alī 188, 265, 405
- al-Ḥasan ibn 'Alī al-Uṭrūsh, Zaydī imam of Ṭabaristān 484, 500
- Ḥasan ibn 'Ammār 573
- al-Ḥasan ibn Būya (Rukn al-Dawla al-Ḥasan) 347, 348, 365, 366, 369, 501
- al-Ḥasan ibn Faraj al-Ṣanādīqī 426
- al-Ḥasan ibn al-Ḥusayn ibn Muṣ'ab 483, 492
- al-Ḥasan ibn Marwān xxv
- Ḥasan ibn Nu'mān 548, 584
- al-Ḥasan ibn Qaḥṭaba 264
- al-Ḥasan ibn Sahl 285, 402, 474, 491
- al-Ḥasan ibn Zayd 327, 484
- Ḥasanids and Ḥusaynids 405, 411–13
- Ḥasanwayhids 369, 381, 382, 660
- Ḥāshid tribal confederation 415
- Hāshim, Banū 169, 184, 206–7, 254
- al-Hāshimiyya (al-Manṣūr's planned capital) 272
- Hāshimiyya (Shī'ite movement) 206–7, 254, 255, 261–5, 269–71, 304
da'wa (clandestine phase of revolution) 261–3, 266
dawla (public uprising) xxiv, 206, 255, 261–5
- Ḥassān ibn Malik ibn Bahdal 215
- Ḥassān ibn Thābit 159
- Ḥātim, Āl 429
- Ḥātim ibn Harthama ibn A'yān 552, 553
- Hatra, kingdom of 89

Index

- ḥawāla* (bills of exchange) 649
 Hawāshim dynasty 412
 Hawāzin, Banū 165
 Hawdha ibn ‘Alī 439
 Ḥawrān 45, 385, 510
ḥawṭas (sacred enclosures) 423
 Ḥawthara 550
 Hawting, G. 643
 Ḥaydarān, battle of 578
 al-Ḥayṣam ibn ‘Abd al-Ṣamad 420
 heirs apparent 297, 659
 ‘Helpers’ *see anṣār*
 Helwan, summer palace at 548
 Henchir al-Douamis (Uchi Maius) 671, 672
 Hephthalites 88, 454, 455, 468
 and Sasanians 84–5, 109, 111, 121–2, 134–5, 454
 Heraclea 290
 Heraclius, Roman emperor xxiii
 coinage 652, Pl. 16.1
 and Egypt 93–4, 543
 and Jews 509
 Muḥammad’s letter to, tradition on 192
 and Muslim conquests 94, 511
 Sasanian wars 65, 88, 93–4, 111, 112–13, 138–9,
 193; Khazar alliance 281; in
 Transcaucasus 94, 139; Turkish
 alliance 88, 94, 139
 True Cross restored to Jerusalem xxiii, 94,
 139, 193, 507
 Herakleopolis, Egypt (Ahnās) 212, 552
 Herat 28, 468, 662
 Muslim conquest 453, 454, 468
 Ṣaffārid occupation 316, 494, 497
 under Sāmānids 372, 497, 498
 Herbelot, Barthélemy d’ 627
 heresy
 Christian concept 80–1, 201
 Islamic concept 277
 Herodian (historian) 100
 Herodian (son of Septimius Odenathus of
 Palmyra) 78
 heroic tradition, Iranian 140
 Hijāz 398–413
 ‘Abbāsids and 275, 400, 401, 405, 406–7
 Abraha’s invasion 183–4
 administration 244, 401–3, 442
 agriculture 57–8, 166–7, 400, 405, 413
 Bedouin 160–1, 383, 398–9, 400, 413
 Bughā al-Kabīr’s campaigns 443
 caliphal court leaves 400
 and central government 242, 275, 403–5,
 417, 419
 conquests by forces from 399
 culture 400, 413, 424
 early Islamic history 399–400
 economy 30, 57–8, 182–3, 244, 413
 elites 57–8, 399, 404–5
 environment, climate and resources 182–3
 Fātimid influence 402, 428, 574
 food supply 271, 399, 400, 403, 411, 439,
 441, 568
 fortified dwellings 678
 governors 244, 275, 401, 417, 419, 431, 442
 graffiti 665
 Ḥasanid–Ḥusaynid rivalry 411–13
 Islamic origins in 221–5; theory denying
 222–3
 landscape 20, 398
 in Late Antiquity 183, 223
 Mecca and Medina’s special status 244,
 403–5
 Muḥammad’s rule over 399
 pre-Islamic period 5, 154, 157, 161, 166–70,
 177–83, 398–9
 rebellions and unrest 260, 279–80, 400,
 406–13, 432, 518; ‘Alid 271, 405,
 407–9, 410
 religious beliefs and groups: Christianity
 398–9; idol worship, polytheism 161–3,
 173; Ismā‘īlīs 429–30; Jews 398–9, *see*
 also under Medina; Khārijites 260; pre-
 Islamic monotheism 177–83; Shāfi‘ī
 and 293–4
 roads and routes 28, 244, 400, 440
 Roman rule 183
 scholars 400, 413, 525
 sources 5, 154, 398, 410, 665
 towns 400, 413; *see also* Mecca; Medina
 trade 20, 57, 166, 182, 399, 420, 643, 680
 Umayyads and 227, 242, 260, 401, 405,
 406, 516
 Zubayrid rule based on xxiii, 216–17, 406–7
 see also Mecca; Medina; pilgrimage
hijra (of the Prophet) xxi, xxiii, 173, 187–8
hijra (emigration), Khārijite 208
 Hilāl, Banū 578
 Hilla xxv, 386
ḥimās (pastures) 439, 441
ḥimāya (protection agreement) 382
 Ḥimṣ 196, 249, 266, 517
 coinage 653, Pl. 16.5
 jund 242, 258, 592
 revolts 257, 259
 Ḥimyar 58, 179, 415, 420, 422, 424
 Hind bint ‘Utba 162
 Hinduism 240, 374, 376–7

Index

- Hindūshāhids of Wayhind 376
 hippodrome at al-Qaṭā'i' 559
 Hīra 157, 164, 165, 179
 see also Lakhmids
 Hishām ibn 'Abd al-Malik, caliph 213, 229,
 523–7
 and Berber revolt 233–4, 591
 building 247, 521, 525; market in Baysān 248,
 671; palace at al-Ruṣāfa 525, 674; Qaṣr
 al-Ḥayr al-Sharqī 247, 249, 526–7
 economic crisis 400
 and Islamic learning and thought 525
 jihād 235–6, 237, 523–5, 527
 sons' revolt against Marwān II 259
 succession to 256, 550
 taxation under 523
 and tribal army 523, 527
 Hishām I ibn 'Abd al-Raḥmān, Umayyad ruler
 of al-Andalus 303, 597
 Hishām II, Umayyad caliph of al-Andalus 597,
 620, 621
Historia Augusta 100–1
 history and historiography 2–11, 348, 688
 Arab tribal 153–6
 development 2–7, 348, 688
 dynastic designations 362
 Egyptian authors 319
 eyewitness testimony 348
 Ḥijāzī 400, 413
 and inconvenient facts 687–8
 Iranian 46–7, 101–2, 140, 145–50; *see also*
 legends (Iranian); *X^w adāy-nāmag*
 Islamic history as concept 7–11
 Ismā'īlī 325, 418
 Omanī 430–1
 Persian–Arabic 104
 provincial histories 458
 Qarāmiṭa denigrated 445
 salvation history 104, 150
 Sāmānid 501–2
 scribes' education in 333
 Syriac 4, 46, 95, 101–2
 traditionalism 692
 Yemenite 418, 423
 Zoroastrian 460
History of the caliphs 252
 hoards of coins 199, 603, 681, 682
 Holy Cities *see* Mecca; Medina
 holy men 184, 509
 Homs 89, 512, 527, 532, 536, 537
 Mahdist state 562
 routes 28
 Hormezd IV, king of Persia 111, 136–7, 152
 Hormizdān *see* Hurmuzān
 Hormuz 50, 453
 horse-rearing 30, 35
 hospital at al-Qaṭā'i' 559
 household
 agricultural plots 32
 idols, pre-Islamic Arabian 161–2, 163
 Sasanian legal and social unit 117
 al-Ḥudaybiya, treaty of 191, 193
 Ḥudayj, Banū 552–3
ḥudūd (Qur'anic punishments) 425
ḥujja ('proof', Ismā'īlī title) 328
 al-Ḥujr ibn 'Adī 215
 Hujwīrī 463
 Ḥumayna, *qaṣr* at 262
 Huns 82–4, 134–5
 hunting 298
 Sasanians and 114, 125, 126n, 149
 Hurmuzān (Hormuzān, Hormizdān), ruler of
 Khūzistān 450, 462
 Hurmuzjan, battle of 104–5
 al-Ḥusayn ibn 'Alī (grandson of the Prophet)
 188, 265
 death xxiii, 215, 406
 followers in Ḥijāz 405, 411–13
 line of 206, 405
 Shī'ite devotion to 206, 215, 389–90
 al-Ḥusayn ibn 'Alī 'the man of Fakhkh'
 279–80, 407
 al-Ḥusayn ibn Ḥamdān 349, 355
 al-Ḥusayn ibn al-Maghribī 389–90
 al-Ḥusayn ibn Zikrawayh (*ṣāḥib al-shāma*, 'the
 man with the birthmark') 338, 355,
 561–2
 al-Ḥusayn al-Afṭas 407–8
 al-Ḥusayn al-Ahwāzī 328
Husraw ī kawādān ud rēdag-ē ('Khusrau and his
 page') 116, 125–6
ḥuṣūn (fortresses) in al-Andalus 612
 Huzam (Medinan idol) 163
 Iaudas, Berber chieftain 582
 al-'Ibād (tribal federation) 157
 Ibadīyya 207, 599
 in Hadramawt 419, 434, 437
 Nizwā and Rustaq schools 435–6, 437, 438
 al-Nukkāriyya branch 598, 617
 Omanī imamate 418, 430, 432, 434–5, 437,
 443; al-Julandā ibn Mas'ūd as
 precursor 433
 Rustamid imamate 318, 596–8
 in Yemen 418–19, 422–3
 Iberia, Caucasus 135, 139

Index

- Iberian Peninsula *see* al-Andalus
 Ibn 'Abbād, Ismā'īl, the Ṣāhib 367, 369
 Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam, Abu 'l-Qāsim 541, 542, 590
 Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam family 319
 Ibn Abī Du'ād, Aḥmad 298, 308
 Ibn Abi 'l-Sāj, ruler of Azerbaijan and Armenia 347, 351–2
 Ibn al-'Adīm, Kamāl al-Dīn 525
 Ibn al-'Amīd, Abu 'l-Faḍl 369
 Ibn al-'Amīd, Abu 'l-Faḥr 'Alī 369
 Ibn Āmir, 'Abd Allāh 167n, 453
 Ibn al-Arquṭ 558, 559
 Ibn 'Asākir, Abu 'l-Qāsim 'Alī 525
 Ibn al-Ash'ath, 'Abd al-Raḥmān 218, 486, 524, 551–2, 596, 599
 Ibn al-Athīr, 'Izz al-Dīn 437
 Ibn al-'Aṭṭār 619
 Ibn Baghl, *qāḍī* of Amida 381
 Ibn Damna, *qāḍī* of Amida 381
 Ibn Faḍlān 502
 Ibn al-Furāt, Aḥmad 333
 Ibn al-Furāt, 'Alī 333, 349, 350, 351
 Ibn al-Furāt, Ja'far 567, 568, 569, 570
 Ibn al-Ḥabḥāb, 'Ubayd Allāh 549, 550, 591
 Ibn Ḥallāj, ruler of Oman 436
 Ibn Ḥawqal 385, 539, 554, 619
 Ibn Ḥawshab, Abu 'l-Qāsim (Manṣūr al-Yaman) 427
 Ibn Hubayra 472
 Ibn Ilyās 576
 Ibn Isfandiyār 480, 481, 484–5
 Ibn Isḥāq, Muḥammad ibn Yaṣār 163, 400, 630
 Ibn Jurayj 400
 Ibn al-Kalbī (Hishām ibn Muḥammad al-Kalbī) 154
 Ibn Khaldūn, 'Abd al-Raḥmān 358
 Ibn al-Khalīj, or al-Khalījī 563
 Ibn al-Khaṣīb 309, 310
 Ibn Khurdādhbeh 272
 Ibn Killis, Ya'qūb 568, 570, 572–3
 Ibn Kundājik 561
 Ibn Māhān (Ḥamdawayh) 420–1
 Ibn Māhān, 'Alī ibn 'Īsā 283, 285, 473, 474
 Ibn al-Mubārak 531
 Ibn al-Mudabbir 320, 556, 558–9, 560
 Ibn al-Muqaffā', 'Abd Allāh 293
 Ibn al-Mu'tazz, Abu 'l-'Abbās 'Abd Allāh xxv, 270, 350
 Ibn Najīb al-Dawla 429
 Ibn Nubāta 537
 Ibn al-Qūṭīyya 586
 Ibn Rā'iq, Muḥammad xxv, 354, 355, 565, 566, 660
 Ibn Rushd (Averroes) 638
 Ibn Sa'd, Abū 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad 629
 Ibn Sanbar 445
 Ibn Shihāb al-Zuhrī 400, 525
 Ibn Sīnā, Abū 'Alī (Avicenna) 369, 501
 Ibn al-Ṣūfī 558, 559
 Ibn Ṭabāṭabā, Muḥammad ibn Ibrāhīm 407, 420
 Ibn Ṭulūn *see* Aḥmad ibn Ṭulūn
 Ibn Ustād-hurmuz, Abū 'Alī al-Ḥasan 385
 Ibn al-Walīd 559
 Ibn al-Wazīr al-Jarawī 552, 558
 Ibn al-Zayyāt, Muḥammad ibn 'Abd al-Malik 299, 308
 Ibn al-Zubayr, 'Abd Allāh, caliph xxiii, 215, 216–17, 406, 518–19
 building programme in Mecca 217, 403
 civil war against Marwān ibn al-Ḥakam *see fitnas* (second)
 coinage 216, 654–5, Pl. 16.8
 Ḥijāzī-based empire xxiii, 216–17, 406, 417–18, 463
 sources biased against 216, 691
 Ibn Zūlāq, Abū Muḥammad 570
 Ibrāhīm, caliph 213, 258
 Ibrāhīm I, Aghlabid 604–5, 610
 Ibrāhīm II, Aghlabid 605, 615
 Ibrāhīm ibn 'Abd Allāh (brother of al-Nafs al-Zakiyya) 271, 275
 Ibrāhīm ibn Adham 531
 Ibrāhīm ibn al-Aghlab 303, 599–600
 Ibrāhīm ibn Khumarawayh 563
 Ibrāhīm ibn al-Mahdī 286, 475
 Ibrāhīm ibn Muḥammad (Ibrāhīm al-Imām) 262
 Ibrāhīm ibn Mūsā ibn Ja'far al-Ṣādiq 286–7
 Ibrāhīm ibn Mūsā al-Kāzīm 408, 420–1
 Ibrāhīm ibn Sīmjur 504
 Ibrāhīm ibn al-Walīd, caliph 258
 ice cores, polar 25
 Iconoclast Controversy 522–3
 iconography
 Christian 652, 653, Pl. 16.2
 Islamic 298; introduced on coinage 220, 654–6
 Sasanian 106, 118, 139–40, 143, 211, 653, 654, Pl. 16.3
 Zoroastrian 76, 106, 654, Pl. 16.3
 ideology
 Baghdad, and 'Abbāsīd 272–3
 Islamic universalist 226–7, 230, 273, 322, 616
 Marwānid 221, 226–7
 retrospective adjustment 299, 331–2, 690
 Sasanian 139–41, 142–4

Index

- idol worship 161–3, 177, 178
- Idris I ibn ‘Abd Allāh, ruler of Fez 280, 303–4, 598–9, 603
- Idrīs II ibn Idrīs I, ruler of Fez 599, 603
- Idrisids (rulers of Fez) II, 304, 343, 598–9, 603–4
 coinage 603–4
 Fāṭimid conquest 343, 616
- Ifīrīqiya
 ‘Abbāsids and II, 318, 578–9, 599–600
 administration 330–1
 coinage 603, 604–5, 657
 creation as *wilāya* 230–1
 governors of al-Andalus appointed from 589
jund rebellions 599
 map xxxvii
 religious groups 341, 613; Khārijites 302–3, 318, 342, 594–8; ‘*ulamā*’ 318–19, 605–7
ribāṭs (fortresses) 341
 social complexity 613
 taxation 330–1, 612
 trade 341
 Zīrid dynasty 574, 578–9, 618
see also individual cities; Aghlabids; Berbers;
and under Fāṭimids
- īghār (fiscal immunity) 312, 353
- Ihnāsiyat al-Madīna (Ahnās, Herakleopolis) 212, 552
- ih̄rām, holy state of 407
- i‘jāz (inimitability of Qur’ān) 186
- ‘Ijl, Banū 154
- Ijlī family of Qazvīn 370
- ijma‘ (scholarly consensus) 294, 637
- ijtihād (religious interpretation) 294
- Ikhhimim 568
- ikhshīd (Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj) 339, 355–6, 565–6
 origin of title 339, 565
- Ikhhshīdids 339, 446, 562, 563–7, 568
 coinage 660
 protect holy places 410, 566, 568
 in Syria 537, 566
see also Aḥmad ibn ‘Alī ibn Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj; Kāfūr, Abu ‘l-Misk; Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj
- Ikjān 615
- ‘Ikrima ibn Abī Jahl 162
- Ilik-Naṣr, Qarakhānid 504–5
- Ilkhanids 143
- ‘ilm *see* Gnosis
- Ilyās ibn Asad, governor of Herat 498
- ‘Imād al-Dīn 429
- imām *al-hudā* (imam of guidance), caliph as 203
- imamate
 ‘Abbāsīd conception 272, 273
 Shi‘ite conception 206, 261–2, 269–71, 326, 425–6, 571; genealogy 265; *see also* occultation
- Imru’ al-Qays, Arab phylarch 91, 92
- India 21, 109, 250–1, 428, 501–2
 Ghaznavid conquests 363, 370, 375–7, 378, 504, 505
 Marwānid campaigns 240–1
 and Oman 432, 434
Panchatantra 127
 pottery 680–1
 routes 376, 485
 Sasanian trade 68, 679
- Indian Ocean 13, 28, 49, 57
 Egyptian contacts 541, 572
 Muslim traders 284, 434, 684
 Sasanian trade 27, 66–7
- Indus region xxiv, 67
- industrial zones in cities 675
- infanticide, Prophet opposes female 187
- inheritance 117, 365–6
- inscriptions
 architectural 221, 682
 early Islamic 665
 and Islamic identity 672, 682
 of Mu‘āwīya’s titles 210, 665
 Namāra 91
 Palmyra 76, 77, 78, 90
 pre-Islamic Arabian, indicating monotheism 179–80
- Ṣafaitic 90
- Sasanian 98–100, 140; of Abnun 99–100; Bishāpūr 99, 100; of Kerdīr 120; Paikuli 98–9, 117, 119–20, 124, 148n; Shāpūr I, *res gestae* 98–9, 117, 119, 123–4, 146
see also coinage (legends); graffiti
- iqṭā‘at (sing. *iqṭā‘*) 312–13, 352–4, 355, 367, 368
 in Egypt 338–9, 577
 in Ghazna 372
- Iran
 and Anērān 143–4
 Barmakid connections 282
 Būyid states *see under* Fars; Rayy
 cities 46, 47–8, 50, 461
 cultural identity 142–4, 289, 317, 347, 479;
 ‘Abbāsids and 282, 289, 301–2, 470, 471, 645
 economy 70, 680
 Ghaznavids and administrative traditions 371, 375

Index

- historical tradition 46–7, 101–2, 140, 145–50; *see also* legends (Iranian); *X^w adāy-nāmag*
- Ibn al-Zubayr's rule 216–17
- Kayanid dynasty 115, 118, 146–7, 150
- Khazar campaigns 462
- literature: heroic tradition 140, 146–7; Middle Persian 125, 127–8; New Persian 345, 502–3, 505; *see also X^w adāy-nāmag*
- al-Ma'mūn and 276, 285–6, 288–90
- and Marwānids 239, 260–1
- Mu'awiya's deportations 517
- Muslim conquest xxiii, 70, 440, 453–4; social effect 263, 461–3
- mythological period 115, 146
- and Oman 430, 431
- provincial organisation 467
- regional traditions 148
- religion: Christianity 464; Islamisation 263, 295, 361–2, 463–6; Khārijism 253–4; Manichaeism 144; Shī'ite revolts 254–5, 260–1; *see also* Zoroastrianism
- resources and economy: agriculture and stockrearing 29, 30, 32, 33, 34, 50; climate 24; irrigation 33, 50; landscape 19, 21; mining 36; oases 21, 32, 50; population 39; routes 28; transhumance on margins 30, 381
- tax revolts 276, 454–5
- see also* kings and kingship, Iranian; Sasanian empire; *and individual places*
- Īrān ibn Rustam ibn Āzādkhū, shah of Sīstān 453
- Iraq
- ‘Abbāsīd empire in (763–861) 12, 224, 269–304, 306, 691
- administration 228, 242, 243, 244, 467
- agriculture 32, 246, 275–6, 277n, 385, 528
- Būyīd rule *see under* Baghdad
- Christianity 249
- cities 46
- coinage 245; *see also under individual cities and rulers*
- garrison towns 70, 205
- iqṭā'at* 367
- irrigation 31, 33, 47, 276, 669–70, 682
- Khārijism 218, 253, 259–60
- land reclamation in southern marshes 29, 276, 323
- Marwānīd subjugation 259–60, 263
- Muslim conquest 196–7, 243, 244, 517; economic effects 70, 198–9
- resource base for caliphate 275–6, 360, 517
- scholarship 252, 688–9
- in second *fitna* 216, 518
- Shī'ism 216–17, 325, 474, 538
- Syriac sources 4
- taxation 31, 276, 517
- trade 679–80, 679, 680, 682
- Zubayrids secure 654
- see also individual cities and regions*
- Irene, Byzantine empress 279, 281
- iron deposits 35–6
- irrigation 29, 33–5, 669–70
- continuity from Late Antiquity 669–70
- Iranian plateau 33, 50
- Ma'ān 667–9
- Marwānīd development 246
- Negev 25, 31
- qanāts* 33–4, 50, 297, 669, 670
- Sasanian 47, 48, 50, 56–7, 129, 669–70; breakdown, and population 33–4, 40, 55
- see also under* al-Andalus; Arabia; Diyāla basin; Egypt; Iraq; Khūzistān; Mesopotamia; Syria
- ‘Īsā ibn ‘Alī ibn ‘Īsā ibn Māhān, governor of Sīstān 488
- ‘Īsā ibn Mūsā 275, 284, 472
- Iṣfahān 28, 50, 347, 369
- Būyīd principality 348, 366
- coinage Pl. 16.22
- Muslim conquest 451, 458
- Isfijāb 504
- Iṣḥāq ibn Kundaj 322
- Iṣḥāq ibn Muḥammad ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥāmid 598
- Ishoyahb III, bishop of Rev Ardashīr 464
- Islam
- ‘Abbāsīds and 280, 291–5, 302–3
- angels 176
- Arab dominance 224, 652
- Arabic terms associated with 187–8
- caliphal authority based on 7–8, 280, 301, 525, 685–6
- and Christianity 307, 643; Christians' attitude to early 511, 515, 652–3; contacts and affinities 8–9, 113, 540
- conquests driven by 113, 645–6
- conversions to *see* Islamisation
- core beliefs established 175
- domestication in empire 295, 314, 387
- and ethnicity 224–5, 267–8, 460, 470–1
- exceptionalism 175–6
- formative and classical periods 689
- fusion of religion, politics and warfare 14, 173–5, 193, 683–4, 691

Index

- Islam (cont.)
 heresy defined 277
 history, concept of Islamic 7–11
 identity 361, 654–6, 665–6, 672; local
 identities expressed in Islamic terms
 295, 314, 387
 and Judaism 189, 307, 643
 and kinship traditions 224
 Late Antique context 7–11, 93–7, 600–1, 643
 Muḥammad's experience as core 175
 origins, theories on 20, 221–5, 628–37, 638,
 641, 642–3; monotheistic context
 177–83, 643
 orthodoxy: in west 613, 620; see also *ḥadīth*
 and traditionalism, *sunna*
 and philosophy 292, 295
 pillars of 692–3
 political culture 14, 690–2
 and polytheism 174
 rise (600–705) 173–225
 ritual 180, 189
 sources on early period 176–7
 survival of early community through belief
 194–5
 and Zoroastrian dualism 113
 see also individual movements and *ḥadīth*
 and traditionalism; imamate;
 Islamisation; Qur'ān; scholarship
 (ISLAMIC); Shī'ism; *sunna*; Sunnism
- Islamic empire (*dār al-islām*)
 'Abbāsīd encompassing of non-Arabs 267–8,
 470–1
 building of 8, 11–15, 175, 302
 in context of Late Antiquity 8–9
 extent 12, 175, 302, 684
 fusion of belief and political power 14, 173–5,
 193, 683–4, 691
 Islamic purpose and design 686
 Marwānīd expansion 217, 227, 230–41, 255–6
 universalist ideology 226–7, 230, 273,
 322, 616
- Islamisation
 'Abbāsīd policies 295, 550–1, 555
 apostasy of Bukhārā 463–4
 and Arabisation 224, 534
 dynastic states 361, 466
 early Muslims' unconcern with 521–2, 644
 by enslavement 251
 first convert 194
 and Islamic commonwealth 361–2
 Kurds 380
 language change and religious identity 534
 Marwānīd period 251
 motivation 463–4, 465
 rate and extent 10, 686, 695
 and regional identity 466
 and social status 295, 463
 sources on 458, 463, 465
 South Asia 284, 377
 and taxation 252, 463, 464, 465, 522, 523
 truce following 155
 see also *mawālī*, and conversion and
 Islamisation *under individual regions*
- Ismā'īl ibn 'Abbād, the Ṣāhib 367, 369
- Ismā'īl ibn Aḥmad ibn Sāmān-khudā, Sāmānīd
 ruler 344, 345, 497–8, 499–500
 coinage Pl. 16.31
 defeats 'Amr ibn al-Layth 336–7, 344, 497,
 499
- Ismā'īl ibn 'Alī 265, 274–5
- Ismā'īl ibn Ja'far al-Ṣādiq 326, 614
- Ismā'īl ibn Nūḥ 505
- Ismā'īl ibn Sebüktegin, Ghaznavid ruler 372,
 373
- Ismā'īl ibn Yūsuf 408–9
- Ismā'īliyya 206, 327–32, 575
 and 'Abbāsīd claims 687
 beliefs 326, 327
da'wa 330; Fāṭimīd 571, 575, 578; in Salamiyya
 327, 328, 329; in Yemen 390, 426, 427–8,
 429–30
 historiography 325, 418
 Indian mission 428
 Kutāma Berbers converted to 328–9
 Maḥmūd of Ghazna's persecution 373, 376
majālis al-ḥikma, proselytising sessions 341
 missionaries 390; in Yemen 426, 427–8,
 429–30
 al-Muktafi's rebellion 337–8
 and Neoplatonism 327, 346
 occultation of imam 326
 revolts in east and 477
 rise 327–32
 Sāmānīds and 346, 503
 sources' inaccuracy 331–2
 state-building experiments 694
 and Zaydis 421
 see also Fāṭimīds; Qarāmiṭa; Salamiyya;
 Ṣulayḥī state; and *under Syria*; Yemen
- isnād* (chain of narrators) 630, 636
 isotope analysis 23
 Iṣṭabl 'Antar, *qaṣr* 666–7, 678
 Iṣṭakhr 26, 48, 50, 143
 Muslim conquest and rule 450, 452, 453–4,
 455, 458
 al-Iṣṭakhrī, Abū Iṣḥāq Ibrāhīm 359

Index

- Itākḥ 299, 301, 308, 557
 Italy 35, 84, 136
 Aghlabid operations 611, 615
 Fāṭimid campaigns 341
 trade 572, 662, 663
ius primae noctis 168
 Ivan-i-Karkhah 49
iwāns 132
 Iyas ibn Qabīṣa al-Ṭāṭ 155
- Jabal Says, *qaṣr* 669
 Jābir ibn al-Walīd 558
 al-Jābiya 216, 512
jabr (predestination) 424
 Jaén 592, 618–19
 Ja‘far ibn al-Faḍl ibn al-Furāt 567, 568, 569, 570
 Ja‘far ibn Falāḥ 569
 Ja‘far ibn al-Ḥādī 284
 Ja‘far ibn Muḥammad 411–12
 Ja‘far ibn al-Mu‘tamid 320–1, 332
 Ja‘far ibn Yahyā al-Barmakī 281–2
 Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, imam 265, 271–2, 326, 393, 614
 Ja‘fari family of Qazvin 370
 Ja‘farids in Medina 409, 410
 al-Ja‘fariyya/al-Mutawakkiliyya, Sāmarrā’ xxv,
 297–8, 299, 300, 675, 677
 Jafnid dynasty 92–3
jāhiliyya (pre-Islamic Arabia) 177–8, 224
 al-Jāḥiẓ 301
 Jahram 452–3
 Jaipāl, *rāja* of Wayhind 376
 Jalāl al-Dawla, Būyid ruler of Baghdad 366,
 368–9, 378
 Jalūlā’, battle of 196
jamā‘i-sunnī principles 278, 280, 283, 289, 295, 301
 al-Janad 414, 416, 417, 419, 422, 424
 Janāḥ al-Dawla, ‘Uqaylid ruler Pl. 16.29
 Jannābā 452–3
 al-Jār 399
 Jarāwa tribe 584
 al-Jarjaraṭī, Fāṭimid *wazīr* 576–8
 al-Jarrāḥ ibn ‘Abd Allāh al-Ḥakamī 464
 Jarrāhid faction 333–4, 349, 350, 577–8
 al-Jawf 414, 426, 430
 Jawhar al-Ṣiqlabī 341, 568, 569, 570, 571, 617, 618
 ‘*ahd* with *ashraf*’ 569, 571, 575
 al-Jawsaq (Dār al-Khilāfa) palace 297, 298
 al-Jaww (al-Khidrima) 439
 Jaxartes river and valley 372–3, 457
 Jayfar ibn al-Julandā 431
 al-Jayhānī, Abū ‘Abd Allāh 345, 502, 503
 Jaysh ibn Khumārawayh, Ṭūlūnid leader 336,
 561, 562
- Jayy 656
 al-Jazīra xxiv, 243–4, 253–4, 352, 506, 520
 administration 242, 243
 agriculture 385
 Aramaic language 507
 Būyid principality of Baghdad and 367–8
 Kurdish transhumance 381
 under al-Ma’mūn 286, 287, 492
 routes across 26, 27, 28
 Ṭūlūnid power 321, 335–6, 535
 see also army, caliphal (Syro-Jazīran tribal)
- Jerash 64, 508, 533
 Jerusalem
 al-Aqṣā Mosque 227, 278, 521, 655, 674; first
 phase 196, 518, 665
 Church of the Holy Sepulchre 508, 516, 520,
 521, 575, 578
 Dome of the Rock 221, 520–1, 655, 665
 grave of St Mary the Virgin 516, 520
 Mu‘awiya and 516, 518, 520
 Muslim conquest 196, 201
 palaces 674
 qibla 189
 True Cross xxiii, 94, 111, 139, 193, 507
- Jews and Judaism
 Babylonian Talmud 130
 Christian 178
 Ḥimyarites and Judaism 179
 Islam and Judaism 173, 189, 223, 307, 643, 690
 law 690
 Mishna, interpretation of 130
 prophetic figures 181
 protected status 464, 571
 restrictions and measures against 158–9, 189,
 299, 307, 334, 575
 under Roman empire 74, 509
 Samaritans 509
 under Sasanians 95, 130
 schools 130
 in Syria, Palestine and Mesopotamia 130,
 509, 517
see also under Arabia; Medina; Yemen
- al-Jibāl 336, 449, 450, 459, 467, 656
 ‘Abbāsid governors 275, 288, 336
see also Rayy
- Jiddah 399, 407, 408–9, 413
 al-Jifāra plain 20
jihād 192–3, 313, 456–7, 686
 Aghlabid in Sicily 610–11
 in al-Andalus 318, 342–3, 611–12, 620
 against Byzantium 529, 531–2, 569
 Ghaznavid 370, 375–6, 377, 504, 695
 Ḥamza ibn ‘Abd Allāh and 488

Index

- jihād* (cont.)
 Hārūn al-Rashīd 529, 531
 Hishām 527
 honorific titles for 377
 Ibāḍīs and 437
 Khārijite commitment to 208
 legitimisation of rulers through 332, 375–6,
 377, 531, 695
 Muḥammad and 190, 195
 Ṣaffārīds 317
 Shī'ites as targets 390
 Turks' conversion removes possibility 503
 Zaydī imams call to 425
- Jilān 467, 479
 Jil-Jilān 452
jinn 166–7
 Jiruft 453
jizya (poll-tax) 212, 219, 417
 John the Baptist, St; Church of, in Damascus 521
 John Bar Penkāyē 202n, 518
 John of Damascus 186, 522–3, 534
 John the Deacon 550
 John of Ephesus 93
 John Malalas 101, 142
 John Moschos 509
 John of Nikiu 543–4
 John Tzimisces 538–9
 Joshua the Stylite 95, 102
 Jovian, Roman emperor 82, 108–9
 Judaea, Roman province of 89
 Judaism *see* Jews and Judaism
 judges *see* *qāḍīs*
 Judgement, Final 293
 Judhām 512
 Juhayna tribe 154
 Julandā dynasty of Oman 431–2, 433, 434
 al-Julandā ibn Mas'ūd 433
 Julian, Roman emperor xxii, 81–2, 108
jummā' (populations from various tribes) 157
 Junayd ibn 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Murrī 240
jund (pl. *ajnād*)
 administrative sub-districts of Syria 242, 517
see also army, caliphal (Syro-Jazīran tribal)
- Jundīshāpūr (Weh-Andiyok-Shabuh, Beth
 Lapat) 49, 105, 132, 496
- Jūr 453
 al-Jurf, 'Aqīq valley 168
 jurisprudence *see* law and jurisprudence
 Jurjān 21, 347, 467, 494
 Muslim conquest 455, 458–9, 460–1, 462, 468
 routes 28, 468
 under Ruzbān Šūl 452, 462
 Ziyārid rule 347, 501
- Jurjān 500
 Justanīds 484
 justice 277, 278, 418, 518, 571–2, 619
 Christians and 515, 522
 just rule, debates on 322
 Khārijite emphasis on 487
 Sasanian priests as experts and judges 116
 social, revolts in east calling for 478
 Zaydī imams dispense Islamic 425
see also *qāḍīs*
- Justin I, Roman emperor 135
 Justin II, Roman emperor 86, 136
 Justinian I, Roman emperor xxii, 43, 141n,
 142n, 581
 and Ghassānīds xxii, 92
 Persian wars 85–6, 135–6, 141–2
 Justinian II, Roman emperor 235
 Juwaynī 413
 Juynboll, G. 636
 Juzjān 454, 500
- Ka'b ibn al-Ashraf 168
 Ka'ba 277, 404, 407
 Muḥammad and 184, 187, 190
 in pre-Islamic period 156, 161, 163
 robbing of 406, 408, 411; Qarmāṭī capture of
 Black Stone xxv, 351, 410, 445
 Ka'ba-i Zardusht, Naqsh-i Rostam 99
 Kabul 28, 316, 495
kābulshāhs 455–6, 485
 Kabyilia, Lesser 615
 Kafūr al-Labī, Abu 'l-Misk, Ikhshīdīd ruler 562,
 566–7, 568
 al-Kahina 584, 591, 593
 Kākwayyīds 369
kalām (theological disputation) 252
 Kalb, Banū 160, 384, 532
 and 'Abbāsīds 523, 527, 528
 fail to establish state in Damascus
 and Ismā'īlī movement 337–8, 384, 536–7
 and Mu'āwīya 209, 513, 516
 rivalry with Qays 518–19, 523, 527
 al-Kalbī, Hishām ibn Muḥammad 154
 Kandahar 28
 Kanza, concubine of Idrīs ibn 'Abd Allāh 599
 Karaj 336, 347
 Karakhānīds *see* Qarakhānīds
 Karakum 21
 Karbalā' xxiii, 215, 389–90, 406
 Karin
 Persian noble house 121
see also Qārin
 Karka, *History of* 46, 53

Index

- Kāmāmag ī Ardaxšī ī Pābagān* ('Ardashīr romance') 125
- Kashka Darya valley 477
- Kashmir 241
- Kasīla *see* Kusayla
- kastra*, Byzantine 42–3
- Kāṭūl al-Kisrawī 669
- Kawād I, king of Persia 56, 85, 121, 134–5, 152
 Khusrau I established as successor 110, 122, 135
 and Mazdakite movement 110, 122
 reforms 52, 110, 122
- Kawād II, king of Persia 139, 152
- Kayanids 115, 118, 146–7, 150
- Kerdīr, Persian *mōbad* 99–100, 105, 120
- Khadīja, wife of the Prophet 169, 184, 186
- Khafāja tribe 386
- Khālid, Banū 594
- Khālid ibn Barmak 274, 281, 481
- Khālid ibn al-Walīd 27, 192, 196
- Khālid ibn Yazīd ibn Mazyad 287
- Khālid ibn Yazīd ibn Mu'āwiya 486
- Khālid al-Qasrī 256, 404
- al-Khamīs (idol) 163
- Khān al-Zabīb 247
- Khaqān 'Urtūj 296, 297
- kharāj*
 land grants to military 352, 353
 land-tax 312–13, 353, 371
- Khārijism 205–6, 207–8
 'Abbasid-era politics 325
 and 'Alī 207, 516
 in al-Andalus 594
 in Bašra 432, 459–60
 Bedouin adherents 383
 beliefs 205–6, 207–8, 487
 and coin designs 654, 655, 656
 demise 694
 egalitarianism 207–8, 487
 Ḥamdānids and 354–5
 Ḥamza ibn 'Abd Allāh's insurgency 492
 imams 206
 name, origin of 207
 Nukkārite branch 598, 617
 Rustamids and 304
 Shabīb ibn Yazīd al-Shaybānī's rebellion 218
 Shī'ism supersedes 325, 354–5
 Ṣufriyya variety 233, 433
 and Umayyads 205–6, 207–8, 218, 441;
 Marwānids 207, 253–4, 256, 259–60, 519
 Ustādhsīs and 476
see also Ibāḍiyya *and* *under* Arabia; Bašra;
 Berbers; Ifrīqiya (religious groups);
 Oman; Ṣaffārids; Sīstān; Yemen
- Kharīstān 457
 battle of 239
- al-Khath'amī, governor of Egypt 552
- Khatt 679
- Khaṭṭāb, Banū, of Murcia 586–7
- Khaybar 20, 159, 191, 399
- Khazars 137, 250–1, 281, 462
 Marwānid campaigns 235, 236, 237
- Khāzim ibn Khuzayma al-Tamīmī 274, 476
- Khazraj 162–3, 164–5, 168–70
- al-Khiḍrīma (al-Jaww) 439
- Khīrāsh ibn Ismā'īl, Abū Ra'shan 154
- Khīrbat al-Karak; possible location of
 Sinnabra/Sinnabris 666
- Khīrbat al-Mafjar, *qaṣr* 250, 526, 667, 669
- Khökē (Choche), suburb of Ctesiphon 53
- Khotan 374
- Khumārawayh ibn Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn 335–6,
 535, 561, 562
- Khurāsān
 and 'Abbasid revolution 255, 261, 263–4,
 469–71
 Abū Muslim in 261, 262
 administration 242, 455, 456
 agriculture and stock-raising 30, 32, 33,
 35, 684
 'Alids' popularity 472
 Arab conquest and settlement 453–4, 456,
 458–9, 461
 army in 456, 465
 conversion to Islam 295, 464, 465
 culture and identity 295, 301–2, 449
 as dynamic frontier 238, 467–8
 factionalism 469
 Ghaznavid rule xxv, 371, 372–3, 378, 504
 governors 239–40, 242, 275, 287, 289, 455,
 456–7, 463; Ṭāhirid xxiv, 288–90,
 314–15, 491–2
 Harūn al-Rashīd and 282, 283
 irrigation 33
 landscape 21
 and Mahdism 614
 al-Ma'mūn and 284–6, 288, 295
 mining 36
 political economy of Islamic 242, 448, 467
 political history 468, 469–79
 revolutionary movements 269, 273, 302,
 475–9, 488; Ḥāshimīyya 255, 261, 263–4
 routes 26, 28, 66, 468
 Ṣaffārid rule 315, 316, 496
 Saljūq takeover 379, 380
 Sāmānid emirate *see separate entry*
 under Ṭāhirids xxiv, 288–90, 314–15, 491–2

Index

- Khurāsān (cont.)
 taxation 263, 282
 trade 50, 66
 Türgesh attacks 239, 457
 under Umayyads 238, 244, 301–2, 455
 Khurramiyya 287–8, 476, 482
 Khurshīd (Dābūyid *iṣbahbadh*) 480
 Khusrau I, king of Persia xxii, 110–11, 136, 152
 and Arabia 111, 160, 165
 and aristocracy 52, 116
 culture and learning under 111, 125–6, 142n
 Kawād establishes as successor 110, 122, 135
 and Mazdakite movement 110, 122
 reforms 49, 52, 110, 116, 122–3; land 117;
 taxation 49, 52, 129
 and Rome: diplomacy 141–2, 143n; wars xxii,
 86, 110, 135–6
 taxation 49, 52, 129
 Khusrau II, king of Persia 137–9, 152
 and bow of Ḥājib ibn Zurāra 155
 coinage 211, 652
 culture and learning under 126–8
 death xxiii, 111, 139
 Egypt under 100, 138
 and Lakhmids xxii, 113, 138
res gestae 126
 and Rome: friendship 111, 137, 141n; wars 88,
 111, 138–9
 Taq-i Bustan rock reliefs 105
 and Wahrām VI Chobin 111, 137, 148
 Khusrau IV, king of Persia 152
 ‘Khusrau and his page’ (*Husrāw ī kawādān ud
 rēdag-ē*) 115–16, 125–6
 Khusrawshunum 452
 Khusro *see* Khusrau
khutba (sermon at Friday prayer); inclusion of
 ruler’s name 316–17, 649
 Fāṭimids 343, 574
 regional dynastic states 374, 491, 495, 660
 Khuza’a tribe 156, 164, 289
 al-Khuza’ī, Mālik ibn al-Haytham 274
 al-Khuza’ī, Muḥammad ibn al-Ash’ath 274
 Khūzistān 21, 324, 367, 496
 agriculture 29, 32, 33–4, 48, 55, 64
 Būyid rule 356, 367
 cities 33–4, 48, 49, 50, 324
 economy 29, 32, 50, 64, 129
 irrigation 33–4, 48, 55, 64
 Muslim conquest 450
 population 33–4, 39–40, 459
 Khūzistān Chronicle 460
Khwadāy-nāmag *see* *X^wadāy-nāmag*
 Khwārazm 239, 344, 467, 500
 Ghaznavid rule 374, 378–9
 Muslim conquest 238, 454, 457
 al-Khwārazmī, Muḥammad ibn Mūsā 501
khwārazmshāhs 500
 Khyber Pass 376
 Kilāb, Banū 169, 362, 384, 538, 577–8
 Kināna tribal federation 153
 Kinda tribal confederation 415
 al-Kindī, Abū Yūsuf Ya’qūb ibn Ishāq 541, 542,
 570, 638
 kings and kingship, Iranian 114–15
 and ancestors and forebears 143, 146
 and aristocracy 115–16, 121–3, 128–9, 147–8
 as ‘brother’ of Byzantine emperor 141–2,
 142n
 consanguineous marriage 119
 display 125
 divine qualities 114, 118, 273
 influence of traditions on other states 273,
 280, 317, 365, 694–5
 inscriptions 98–9; *see also* under Bishāpūr;
 Paikuli; Naqsh-i Rostam
 legitimisation 114–15, 118, 143
 Mardāvīj ibn Ziyār attempts to restore 347,
 361
 mythical 115, 146
 representations 105, 106, 114–15; *see also*
 reliefs, Sasanian rock-cut
 succession and legitimacy 111–12, 115, 118, 120
 symbols of kingship 125
 titles 114–15, 118
 and Zoroastrianism 118–19, 131
 kinship 204–5, 216, 224
 and administrative appointments 209, 242,
 244, 274–5
 Marwānids and 227, 242, 244, 253
 strength at time of Muḥammad 173–4, 187
 and succession to caliphate 194, 206–8, 271;
 fraternal or primogeniture 227, 228,
 256, 271
see also genealogy
 Kirmān 28, 36, 459–60, 467, 654
 Būyids and 348, 366
 Muslim conquest 453, 458; and revolt (39/
 659–60) 454–5
 Ṣaffārid rule 316, 494, 495
 al-Kirmānī (*dā’ī*) 576, 578
 Kirmānshāh 381
 al-Kisā’ī 278
 Kish, Khurāsān 277, 477
 Kister, M. J. 631
 Kizilkum 21
 Klier, Klaus 631

Index

- Ko Kho Khao 679–80
 Konya plain 45
 Koren, Judith 643
 Kūfa
 ‘Abbāsids and xxiv, 261, 264, 272, 275, 276, 288
 administration 244, 467
 buildings and city plan 276, 674
 capital of caliphate 209–10, 400
 coinage 656, 657, Pl. 16.13
 conquests by forces from 451–2, 459, 468, 469, 484
 in first *fitna* 516
 founded as garrison, *miṣr* 196, 672–3
 governors 205, 209, 275; residence 665–6, 667
 Mazyadid dynastic state in area 384
 religious and political ethos 205, 207–8, 459, 484; Hashimiyya and ‘Abbasid revolution xxiv, 261, 264; Qarāmiṭa 328, 444, 446; Shi‘ism 206, 254–5, 260, 326
 revolts under Marwānids 254–5, 260
 scholarship 153–4, 525, 532
 ‘Uqaylid control 386
 Kūfic script 288
 al-Kulaynī, Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad 388
 Kulthūm ibn ‘Iyād 591
kūra (local administrative district) 241
 Kurdish principalities 361, 364, 380–3, 386, 387
 Ḥasanwayhids 369, 381, 382, 660
 Marwānids 363, 381, 382, 383; and town of Amida 381, 382
 Kusayla (Kasīla) 583–4
 Kush, Ras al-Khaimah 679, 680–1
 Kushano-Sasanian coinage 107
 Kutāma *see under* Berbers
 Kwa Gandaganda 679–80

 labour 33, 249, 400
 see also artisans; peasants; slaves and slavery
 Ladoga, Staraja 681
 Laguantan 582–3
 Lakhmids 92, 96, 135, 164, 165–6
 Christianity 157, 179
 Khusrau II abrogates kingship xxii, 93, 113, 138
 Lamak ibn Mālik 429
 Lammens, Henri 639–40
 Lamu archipelago 681
 land
 acquired through conquests 200, 588
 caliphal 200
 Ghaznavid royal 371
 grants 321, 352, 353, 517–18; *see also* *iqṭā‘āt*
 law on 588
 marginal, colonisation of 618
 reclamation 276, 323
 Sasanian 110, 117, 128–9, 200, 463
 speculation 528
 surveying 243, 333, 549
 use 22, 29–35
 see also estates *and under* taxation
 landscape 19–22, 71
 Lane, E. W. 627
 languages
 Ḥanafī legitimisation of non-Arabic 460
 local, persisting in east 466
 modern learning of 627, 641
 and religious identity 534
 see also *individual languages and under* administration
 Languedoc 232
 Lapidus, I. 639
 Laribus 615
 Lashkar-i Bāzār palace 377
 Late Antiquity
 caliphate in context of 8–9
 Christian traditions, and authority of caliphate 686
 cities 8–9, 12, 41–2, 43, 46, 52, 53, 670–1
 climate 22–3
 commerce 58–70, 678
 continuity into Islamic period 664, 666, 669–70, 678, 682; *quṣūr* 666, 668
 economy 37–8, 58–70, 71, 72, 80, 678
 end, Pirenne’s thesis on 600–1
 Ḥijāz in 223
 Islamic history in relation to 7–11, 93–7, 600–1, 643
 learning 688
 political and social structures 37–8
 resources 58–70
 Syria in 507, 508–11; *see also* Roman/Byzantine empire; Sasanian empire
 Latin language 587, 608–9
 law and jurisprudence
 ‘Abbāsids and 278
 book-writing, late eighth-century 689
 and coinage 650–1, 656, 658, 661, 663
 development in Ḥijāz 400, 413
 Egyptian authors; Ibn ‘Abd al-Ḥakam family 319
 emergence after time of Prophet 637
 Ismā‘īlī belief on 327
 Jewish influence on Islamic 690
 on land 588

Index

- law and jurisprudence (cont.)
 modern scholarship and 631, 639, 641
 obligations 117
 pre-Islamic Arabian 157
 Roman influence on Islamic 690
 Sasanian 116, 117, 132–3
 schools of jurisprudence 14, 688, 693; *see also*
 Ḥanafī; Ḥanbalī; Mālikī; *and* Shāfi‘ī
 schools of law
 Sufyānid period 209
 traditionalism 692, 693
 on water rights and canals 493
 in west 303, 588, 605–6
 in Yemen 423, 424
 Zaydī imams and 425
 Lawāta Berbers 590
 Łazar of Pharb 102
 Lazica 88, 135–6
 learning *see* scholarship
 leather trade 27, 57, 60
 Lebda (Leptis Magna) 582
 Lecker, Michael 631
 lecture notes 631–2
 Leder, S. 632
 legends
 Iranian 103, 115, 144; Alexander traditions
 147, 149, 150
 al-Kāhina 584, 591, 593
 legitimisation
 Sasanians 114–15, 118, 143
 successor states 364
 western Islamic states 376, 596, 613–14,
 621, 695
 see also under Fāṭimids; Ghaznavids; *jihād*
 Leiden, university of 627
 Leo III, Byzantine emperor 235, 522
 León 342–3
 Leptis Magna 582
 letters
 between Mu‘āwiya and Byzantine
 emperors 210
 by Muḥammad 164n, 174–5, 192,
 439, 440
 between Sasanians and Roman emperors
 141nn
 Levant, geography of 19–20, 23
 Libanius of Antioch 509
 library; Shi‘ite, in Baghdad 388
 Libya 20, 541
limitanei (Roman troops) 87
 lineage *see* genealogy
 linen 572
 Lisbon 232
 literature
 Arabic 161, 283–4, 355, 369, 375, 423–4
 Persian 100–4, 127–8, 129, 132, 140
 see also apocalyptic; biographical
 dictionaries; hagiography; history and
 historiography; poetry; Qur‘ān
 livestock 27, 35
 see also pastoralism
 locksmiths 129
 Lombards 136, 611
 Louis I the Pious, king of France 612
 Lu‘lu’ 321, 560
 Lūling, Günter 635, 642, 643
 Luristān 49
 Luxenberg, Christoph 635, 642
 luxury goods, trade in 27, 33, 65, 66, 182, 678,
 680
 Lydda, church of 521
 Ma‘ān 667–9
 Macedonia 22
 al-Madā‘in (Ctesiphon, Tesfōn) xxiii, 33, 111,
 386
 buildings and plan 47, 53; palaces 106, 125,
 199, 361
 Muslim conquest 112–07, 106n, 196, 199, 201
 Roman attacks 74–5, 76, 82
 wealth 125, 199, 201
 al-Madā‘inī, Abu ‘l-Ḥasan 630
 Madelung, Wilferd 630
 al-Mādharā‘ī, Muḥammad 565, 567
 al-Mādharā‘ī family 335, 560–1, 563–4, 565
madhhabs (schools of law) 350–1
 see also law and jurisprudence (schools of
 jurisprudence)
 Madhḥij tribal confederation 415
 Madīnat Iyyih (Tolmo de Minateda, Albacete)
 608
 Madīnat al-Salām (‘city of peace’, Baghdad)
 272
 coinage 657, 681, Pls. 16.23, 16.24, 16.27
 Madīnat al-Zāhira 620, 621
 Madīnat al-Zahrā’ 605
 Maghāriba (free soldiers from Islamic west)
 309, 565
 Maghrib xxxvii
 see also west and individual states and
 dynasties
Maghrib al-aqṣā 615, 616, 617
 Magrāwa tribe 616
 Maharashtra 68
 al-Mahdī, caliph 270, 277–9, 442–3, 535
 building works 244, 277–8

Index

- coinage Pls. 16.16, 16.19
 as heir apparent 273–4, 284, 473
 and Mecca 244, 277–8
- Mahdī dynasty of Zabīd 422
- Mahdism and the *mahdī* 445, 561–2, 614–15
see also ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī; Muḥammad
 ibn al-Ḥasan; Muḥammad ibn Ismā‘īl
- al-Mahdiyya, Ifrīqiya 341, 342, 617
- al-Mahfūza, near Brahmanābād 240–1
- Mahmūd of Ghazna xxv, 373–7, 505
 army 374, 375, 377
 coinage Pl. 16.33
 honorific titles 372, 377
 Indian campaigns 375–7
 and *jihād* 375–6, 377
 in Khurāsān 372–3, 504
 and Khwārazm 374, 378
 and Qarakhānids 505
 and Sāmānids 372, 504
 Sunnism 373, 374, 376, 391, 393
- Mahūya, *marzbān* of Marw 454, 462
- majālis al-ḥikma* (Ismā‘īlī proselytising
 sessions) 341
- Majd al-Dawla, Büyid ruler of Rayy 374
- Mākān ibn Kākī 347
- Makhzūm clan 409
- Makrān 21, 28, 240, 453, 467
- Málaga 232
- Malalas, John 101, 142
- Malatya (Melitene) 28, 136, 235–6, 529, 566
- Malays resettled in Syria 517
- Malechus (Podosaces, phylarch) 91
- Mālik ibn ‘Anas 271, 278, 400
- Malik Shāh I ibn Alp Arslan, Saljūq leader 383,
 Pl. 16.34
- Mālikī school of law 424, 693
 in al-Andalus 303, 588, 605–6, 619
 in Ifrīqiya 341, 342, 590, 605–6, 617;
 Aghlabids and 318–19, 606
- Ma‘mar ibn Rāshid 525
- mamlakat al-islām* (‘realm of Islam’) 359
- mamlūks* *see* *ghulām*
- al-Ma‘mūn, caliph xxiv, 270, 285–95
 and ‘Alids 286, 474
 army xxiv, 287–8, 290, 296
 and Baghdad 286, 474–5
 and Byzantium 290–1, 302, 529
 Caspian region under 481–2
 and cities of east 482
 civil war against al-Amin xxiv, 282–3, 284–6,
 407, 473–4, 528, 552–3
 coinage reform 288, 474, 659, Pls. 16.22,
 16.23
- Egypt under 276, 553
 governors 288–90, 498; Ṭahirids 285, 287,
 482, 490–1
 and Ḥijāz 402, 407
- Iranian and Khurāsānī connections 276,
 284–6, 288–90, 304; governor and
 caliph in Marw 283, 474–5; leaves for
 Baghdad 286, 475
- and Mazyār 481–2
- political supporters 287, 288–90
 and regionalism 304, 475
- religious and intellectual life under 283, 286,
 288, 291–5; Mu‘tazilism 291–3, 294–5,
 392–3
- reunification and reorganisation of empire
 286–91
 and Sīstān 488
 and succession 286, 420, 475
 taxation 276, 288
 and Yemen 420–1
- Ma‘mūnids of Jurjānī 500
- Ma‘n, Banū 429
- Ma‘n ibn Zā‘ida al-Shaybānī 275, 419, 486, 487
- Manākhī dynasty of Yemen 422, 424
- Manāt (Medinan idol) 163
- Manbij Pl. 16.11
- Manda 681
- Manī‘, Numayrid ruler Pl. 16.39
- Mani, religious leader 124–5, 131, 149, 683
- manpower *see* army, caliphā (ethnic
 composition); labour; mercenaries;
 slaves and slavery
- Manichaeism 102, 223, 477
 in Sasanian empire 102, 130, 131–2, 133, 144
- al-Manṣūr, Abū Ja‘far, ‘Abbāsīd caliph xxiv, 1,
 269–77
 and Abū Muslim 340, 472, 491
 administration 274–5, 276, 278
 ‘Alid challenges 269–72, 407, 528–9
 and Arab elite 274, 275, 302, 528
 Baghdad founded by 1–2, 7, 272–3, 674
 choice as caliph 472
 consolidation of caliphā power 255, 266–7,
 269–72, 276, 472
 finances 276–7
 and Iranian elements in empire 302
 Khālid ibn Barmak as adviser 281
 and provinces 278, 442, 472–3, 480, 590;
 Syria 275, 528, 533–4; Yemen 419
 religious policies 293
 and succession 273–4, 284
 and Umayyads of al-Andalus 303
- al-Manṣūr, Faṭimid caliph 342, 562, 617

Index

- Maṣṣūr, Abu 'l-Ḥārith, Sāmānid ruler 372–3
 al-Maṣṣūr, Muḥammad ibn Abī Āmir
 (Almanzor) 376, 620–1
 al-Maṣṣūr ibn Buluggīn, Zirid ruler 574
 al-Maṣṣūr ibn al-Mufaḍḍal 429
 Maṣṣūr ibn Nūḥ, Sāmānid *amīr* 503
 Maṣṣūr al-Ṭunbudhī 610
 Maṣṣūr al-Yaman (Abu 'l-Qāsim ibn
 Ḥawshab) 427
 al-Maṣṣūra, Sind 240–1, 673, 674
 al-Maṣṣūriyya, Fātimid capital 341
 Mantai, Sri Lanka 679–80
 al-Maqrīzī 555, 570
maḡṣūra (enclosure in mosque for caliph) 210
 Mar Sabas, monastery of 509
 Marāgha 382, Pl. 16.30
 Marājil, mother of al-Ma'mūn 477
 Mar'ash 529
 Marcomanni 75
 Mardānshāh, *maṣmūghān* of Dunbāwand 462
 Mardāvīj ibn Ziyār xxv, 347, 348, 354, 361–2
 Ma'rīb 414
 Marīnid dynasty 695
 Marj Rāhiṭ, battle of 216, 519
 Marj al-Sabalān, battle of 237
 markets 619, 650, 671
 marriage
 Arab–Visigothic, in al-Andalus 586–7
 Sasanian: law 117; royal consanguineous
 116, 119
 Martel, Charles, king of Franks xxiv, 232, 589
 martyrs, Christian 101, 609
 Marw 28, 51, 53
 Abū Muslim takes xxiv, 264
 coinage 662
 conversion of Christians to Islam 464
 Mahūya's rule 454, 462
 al-Ma'mūn in 283, 286, 474–5
 under Marwān II 260–1, 263
 Muslim conquest 453, 454, 455, 459, 462
 Saljūqs occupy 379–80
 Ṭāhirid move of capital to Nīshāpūr 493,
 499–500
 trade 50, 51, 68
 Yazdegerd III assassinated at xxiii, 112, 454
 Marw al-Rūdh 453, 454, 455, 459
 Marwa, hill at Mecca 190
 Marwān I ibn al-Ḥakam, caliph 213, 216, 519
 civil war against Ibn al-Zubayr *see fitnas*
 (second)
 Marwān II ibn Muḥammad, caliph xxiv, 213,
 258–61, 527
 career before accession 237, 257
 defeat and death xxiv, 264–5, 550
 and Egypt 263, 264–5, 550
 and Ṭālib al-Ḥaqq 407, 418–19
 widow marries Ṣāliḥ ibn 'Alī 529
 Marwānid period (705–63) 226–68
 see also individual caliphs and topics
 throughout index
 Marwānids (Kurdish) 363, 381, 382, 383
 and town of Amida 381, 382
 Mary the Virgin, St; grave in Jerusalem 516,
 520
 Masāla ibn Ḥabūs 616
 Masār, mountain of 427
 Mashāriqa (Egyptian faction) 565
 Mashhad; tomb of 'Alī al-Riḍā 390
al-mashriq ('the eastern lands') 448, 449, 474
 Maṣjid-i Soleimān 48
 Maslama, Banū 586
 Maslama ibn 'Abd al-Malik 229, 520
 campaigns 235, 237, 253
 Masqaṭ 437
 al-Maṣṣīṣa (Mopsuestia) 529, 539
 Masts, battle of the 511, 514
 Mas'ūd al-'Abdī 441
 Mas'ūd ibn Maḥmūd ibn Sebūktegin, ruler of
 Ghazna 377–80
 mathematics 423
 al-Māturidī, Abū Maṣṣūr 501
 Maurice, Roman emperor 137, 141n
 Mavia 91
mawālī (non-Arab converts) 251, 550
 'Abbāsids and 267–8, 419
 administrative posts 219, 419, 620
 in al-Andalus 620
 in army 465
 conditions of conversion 550
 in Iran 263
 resent Syro-Jazīran troops 252
 'ulamā' 606, 688
 'Umar ibn 'Abd al-'Azīz promotes equality
 522, 523
 Mawdūd ibn Mas'ūd, ruler of Ghazna 380
 Maximus the Confessor 509
 Maysāra al-Madghārī 591, 595
 Mayyāfāriqīn xxv, 363, 381, 382, 537
 Mazara 611
 Mazdakism
 in eighth–ninth centuries 477, 483
 under Sasanians 85, 109–10, 122, 130, 132
 Mazyad, Banū, or Mazyadids xxv, 362,
 384–5, 386
 Māzyār ibn Qārīn, ruler of Ṭabaristān 289–90,
 295, 481–3

Index

- Mecca
 administration 401, 402, 442
 agriculture 166–7
 buildings 217, 277, 403–4, 428
 caliphs and 277–8, 280, 399, 403–4, 410
 decline 409, 413
 excavations not permitted 664
 Fāṭimid influence 428, 574
 food supply 399
 hills of Marwa and al-Ṣafāʾ 190
 Ibn Ṭūlūn defeated at 409
 idol worship, polytheism 161–2, 163, 173
 mosques 277, 403
 pre-Islamic period 154, 161, 166–7, 399
 Qarmāṭī sack and theft of Black Stone xxv,
 351, 410, 445
qibla 189
 rebellions and disorder 260, 279–80, 406–13
 rulers and conquerors: Ḥasanids 411;
 Hawāshim 412; Ibn al-Zubayr xxiii,
 216–17, 406–7; Ibrāhīm ibn Mūsā al-
 Kāzīm 420; Ikshhīdids 410; Quraysh:
 166, 399; Quṣayy 164; Saljūqs 413; Ṭalib
 al-Ḥaqq 418
 scholars in 413, 525
 sources on 154, 398
 special status 244, 403–5
 trade 20, 27, 57, 60, 166, 182, 399, 420, 643
 Umayyads executed in 406
see also Kaʿba; pilgrimage; *and under*
 Muḥammad, the Prophet
- Media 21, 28, 30, 452
- medicine 127, 132–3, 142n
- Medina
 administration 401, 402
 agriculture 168
 buildings 403–4, 410, 664; mosques 204, 227,
 403
 caliphate based in 204, 209–10, 399
 Constitution of 157, 188–90
 and Fāṭimid Egypt 412, 574
 first *fitna* 406, 432
 food supply 399, 403
 governors 244, 401, 431, 442
 Ḥārūn al-Rashīd's endowments 280
 idol worship 162–3
 Jews 173, 189; before Islam 161, 164–5, 168,
 169–70; expulsions and executions
 158–9, 189; and Muḥammad 173, 184,
 189, 191, 223
 location 20
 names 173
 and nomads 160–1
- pre-Islamic society 154, 157, 167–70
 revolts 260, 271, 407–8, 409
 rulers: Abū al-Futūḥ and son 412; Ḥusaynids
 411; Ikshhīdids 410; Jaʿfarids 410; Ṭalib
 al-Ḥaqq 418
 Sasanian authority in 164–5
 scholars 525
 sources 154, 398
 special status 244, 403–5
 trade 57
 Umayyads and 227, 260, 401, 406, 516
see also under Muḥammad, the Prophet
- Mediterranean region
 agriculture 30, 34
 climate 24
 communications 13
 landscape 19
 trade 27, 600–1, 678
- Melilla 616
- Melitene (Malatya) 28, 136, 235–6, 529, 566
- Melkites 534
- Melque, al-Andalus 608
- Menander Protector 101, 124, 141–2
- mercenaries 57, 107, 309
 Turkish commanders xxv, 296, 297, 301,
 308, 310
see also under Daylam and Daylamites
- merchants 413, 472, 531
- Mérida 232, 601, 612
- Merovingians 678
- Mesene 128
- Mesopotamia
 agriculture 506; Sasanian 29, 30, 39–40, 56,
 64–5, 69; Umayyad period 226, 246, 684
 Chinese imports 680
 Christianity 514–16
 cities 46, 47, 48, 49
 climate 24
 coinage 655, 657, 658, 663, Pls. 16.11, 16.21
 early caliphs' direct rule 209
 irrigation and canals 34, 39–40, 48, 55, 56, 112
 Jewish rabbinic schools 130
 Khārijite rebellion (695–6) 218
 landscape 19, 20–1
 Muslim conquest 196–7, 511
 population 39–40, 49
 Qarmāṭī raids 444
 Roman–Sasanian campaigns 48, 64–5, 136
 routes 27, 28, 49, 69
 Sasanian economy 29, 30, 39–40, 47, 56,
 64–5, 69
 Sayf al-Dawla takes western 537
 in second *fitna* 216

Index

- Mesopotamia (cont.)
 taxation 219
see also al-Jazīra; Sawād
- messianic beliefs 273, 302, 478
 and ‘Abbād al-Ru‘aynī 418
 and Abū Muslim al-Khurāsānī 269
 and al-Muqanna‘ 277
 and Sunbād̄h the Magian 476
 and Zanj revolt 558
see also Mahdism and the *mahdī*;
 millenarianism
- metals, precious 36, 65, 70–1, 94
see also gold; silver
- Mheila 678
- Michael the Syrian 522
- Midrārīds (rulers of Sijilmāsa) 343, 595, 616
miḥna (doctrine of createdness of Qur’ān)
 xxiv, 291–3, 294–5, 531–2, 557
 abandonment 297, 298–9, 301, 307, 392, 557,
 686–7
- Mihrānīds of Rayy 452
- Miknāsa 616
- Mila 615
- milestones 220, 400
- militarisation
 Arab society, in Late Antiquity 96, 97
 ninth-century, of state 13, 332
 Sasanian cities 48, 50, 51
- militias, popular (*‘ayyārīn*) 316, 317, 489, 493, 494
- milk brotherhood, ‘Abbāsīd–Barmakīd 282
- millenarianism 272, 340, 528, 575
see also Mahdism and the *mahdī*; messianic
 beliefs
- millet 32
- mineral resources 27, 29, 35–6
see also metals; precious *and individual*
metals
- minting *see* coinage
- Mirdāsīds (rulers of Aleppo) 362, 383–4, 385–6,
 577–8
- Misikhe, battle of 100
- Miskawayh, Abū ‘Alī 348, 354, 375, 390
- Miṣr (Egypt, or Fustāt) 546
miṣr see garrison towns
- missionaries
 Khārījite in North Africa 595, 596–7
see also under Ismā‘īliyya
- Miswar, Jabal 427
- al-Mizza 256
- mōbads* (Zoroastrian priests) 116
- monasticism
 Arabia 92, 179
 Cordoba area 609
- Egypt 549, 554, 556
 financial effect of Muslim conquest 512, 515
 stories involving monks 1, 2, 8, 184
- Syria 508–9, 510, 512, 515, 535, 540
 taxation 549
 wealth 199, 512, 515
- monetisation 59
 Late Antiquity 30–1, 59, 61, 63, 67
 Marwānīd 245
- money
 non-physical forms 649
see also coinage; monetisation
- Mongols 11
- monotheism
 Arabian pre-Islamic 177–83, 223–4
 relationship of Islam and other monotheist
 beliefs 174, 186, 643, 686
see also Christianity; Islam; Jews and
 Judaism
- months xxi
- Mopsuestia (al-Maṣṣīṣa) 529, 539
- Morocco 583, 591, 595–6
see also Fez; Idrīsīd dynasty
- mosaics 106, 140, 277, 522
- Moses 189
- mosques
 location and importance in cities 7, 273,
 673–4, 682
maḡṣūra, private enclosure for caliph 210
 at places where Prophet had prayed 403–4
 standard form 210
 two congregational, at Sāmarrā’ 675
 Umayyad 227, 403–4, 521
see also under individual cities
- Mosul 237, 243–4, 248, 259–60, 274–5, 537
- Būyīd rule 366, 368
 coinage 663
 Ḥamdānīd rule 355, 367, 368, 694
 Khārījism 253–4
 Kurds in area of 380, 384
 Turks occupy 387
 ‘Uqaylīd state 363, 383–4, 385, 386–7
- Mottahedeh, R. 639
- Motzki, H. 636
- Mozarabs 608–9
- Mshatta palace 298
- Msila 617
- Mu‘adh ibn Muslim al-Dhuhlī 274
- Mu‘āwiya I ibn Abī Sufyān, caliph xxiii, 205,
 209–11, 512–18
 accession 204, 516
 administration 208, 209–11, 401, 517
 and Baḥrayn 440, 441

Index

- building works 518, 526, 665, 666
 and Byzantium 210, 514
 and Christianity 520
 civil war against 'Alī *see fitnas* (first)
 coinage 210, 211, 517, 654, 665
 conquest of North Africa 583
 conservatism 214
 and Hijāz 401, 402, 403, 406
 and Jerusalem 520, 665
 kinship 209, 213, 214
 leadership 175
 and Shi'ism 215, 389
 succession to 205, 215, 217
 titles 210, 665, 686
 and Yemen 417
- Mu'āwiya II ibn Yazīd, caliph 213, 215, 518–19
 Mu'āwiya ibn Hishām 213, 235
 Mu'āwiya ibn Ḥudayj 547
 al-Mu'ayyad 298, 309
 Mubayyiḍa 476
 Muḍar faction 253, 434–5, 523
 Mudhaykhira 426, 427
 al-Mufaḍḍal ibn Abī al-Barakāt 429
 al-Mufid, al-Shaykh 388
 Mugh, Mount 478
 al-Mughīra ibn Shu'ba 416
muḥaddithūn *see ḥadīth* and traditionalism
muḥājirūn ('Emigrants') 159, 187, 188, 204–5
muḥakkim (Khārijite appellation) 207
 Muhallab ibn Abī Ṣufra 487
 al-Muhallabī, Abū Muḥammad al-Ḥasan ibn
 Muḥammad 389
 Muhallabī family of Oman 432
 Muhallabid governors of Ifrīqiya 599
 Muḥammad, the Prophet xxii, xxiii, 183–93
 and Abū Bakr 391
 and Abū Sufyān 513
 and 'Alī 205–6, 389
 and apocalyptic concerns 644–5
 as arbitrator 174
 and Bedouin 159–60, 190
 campaigns 174, 189–93, 195, 399, 439–40, 684
 and Christians 184, 223
 coinage with name on 654–5, 655–6, 665
 commercial dealings 166, 168n
 death xxiii, 193
 genealogy 169, 188
hijra xxi, xxiii, 173, 187–8
 illiteracy, dogma of 182, 185–6
 Islam and Islamic state modelled on 7–8,
 10–11, 175
 and Jews 173, 184, 189, 191, 223
 and *jihād* 190, 195
 and Ka'ba 184, 187, 190
 leadership 174, 175, 224
 letters 164n, 174–5, 192, 439, 440
 and Mecca: life in, to *hijra* xxiii, 166, 183–7;
 campaigns against 190–2; Meccans'
 surrender 161–2, 190–1, 191–2, 224, 399;
 pilgrimage to 191, 389
 in Medina xxiii, 173, 174, 187–93, 399; *see also*
hijra
 mosque at each place where Prophet
 prayed 403–4
 and al-Mundhir ibn Sāwā 164n
 name as postdating Prophetic claims 184
 and nomads 159–60, 190, 438
 prophecy, style of 185, 187, 224
 Qur'an addresses problems faced by
 186, 190
 and Quraysh 184, 191–2, 399
 religious influences on 173, 186, 223
 revelations 173, 184–7; *see also* Qur'an
 seal of prophethood 184
 social criticism 187
 sources on 5–6, 628, 630
 stories of recognition as prophet 184
 succession to 193–5, 205–6, 389, 391
sunna (doctrine of prophetic precedence)
 689–90
 and Umayyads 513
 and *umma* 189
 and Yemen 415
- Muḥammad, 'the Pure Soul' xxiv
 Muḥammad ibn 'Abbad 275
 Muḥammad ibn 'Abd Allāh ibn Ṭāhir 310, 315
 Muḥammad ibn 'Abd Allāh ibn Ziyād
 (Muḥammad al-Ziyādī) 421
 Muḥammad ibn 'Abd al-Kān 561
 Muḥammad I ibn 'Abd al-Rahmān, Umayyad
 ruler of Spain 597, 612
 Muḥammad ibn Abi 'l-Saj al-Afshīn 409
 Muḥammad ibn 'Alī 262
 Muḥammad ibn Dāwūd ibn al-Jarrāh 333
 Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥanafīyya 206–7, 216–17
 Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan, the *mahdī* 265,
 326, 614
 Muḥammad ibn Ḥumayd al-Ṭūsī 287
 Muḥammad ibn Ismā'īl ibn Ja'far al-Ṣādiq, the
mahdī 326, 327, 536, 614
 Muḥammad ibn Ja'far Abū Hāshim 412
 Muḥammad ibn Ja'far al-Ṣādiq 408
 Muḥammad ibn Khanbash 438
 Muḥammad ibn Khazar 616
 Muḥammad ibn Maḥmūd ibn Sebüktegin,
 Ghaznavid ruler 377

Index

- Muḥammad ibn al-Musayyab, ‘Uqaylid ruler 386
- Muḥammad ibn Qāsim al-Thaqafī 240, 241, 376
- Muḥammad ibn Sarī ibn al-Ḥakam 552
- Muḥammad ibn Sulaymān ibn Dā’ūd 407–8, 410
- Muḥammad ibn Sulaymān al-Kātib 338, 562, 563, 574
- Muḥammad ibn Ṭāhir 494, 495
- Muḥammad ibn Takīn 565
- Muḥammad ibn Thawrī, governor of Bahrayn 435
- Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj, *al-ikhshīd* 339, 355–6, 562, 565–6
- Muḥammad ibn ‘Ubayd Allāh 411
- Muḥammad ibn Zā’ida, ruler of Oman 433
- Muḥammad ibn Zayd 327
- Muḥammad al-Bāqir 254, 265
- Muḥammad al-Mahdī *see* al-Mahdī, caliph
- Muḥammad al-Muntaẓar *see* Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan
- Muḥammad al-Nafs al-Zakiyya 265, 271–2, 407, 552
- Muḥammad al-Qā’im, Fāṭimid caliph 562, 565, 567, 617
- Muḥammad al-Ziyādī (Muḥammad ibn ‘Abd Allāh ibn Ziyād) 421
- al-Muḥammadiyya *see* Rayy
- Muḥammira 476
- Muḥannā, Banū 411, 412
- Muḥarram, tenth of 189, 388–9
- al-Muḥāsibī 351
- al-Muḥassin ibn al-Furāt 351
- al-Muhtadī, caliph 270, 300, 311–13
- Muir, Sir William 626
- al-Mu‘izz, Fāṭimid caliph 411–12, 567–8, 568–70, 617, 618, Pl. 16.37
- Mu‘izz al-Dawla (Aḥmad ibn Būya) 347, 365, 366, 367–8, 389
- as *amīr al-umarā’* 348, 356, 365
- early career 348, 356
- establishes power in Baghdad xxv, 356, 362, 365, 499
- al-Mu‘izziyya 569, 570
- Mujāshī‘ ibn Ma’sud al-Sulamī 453
- al-Mukarram Aḥmad ibn ‘Alī al-Ṣulayhī 428
- al-Mukhtār Abū Ḥamza 206, 216–17, 254, 407, 459
- al-Mukhtāra 324
- Mukramids of Oman 436–7
- al-Muktafi, caliph 270, 336, 337–9, 349
- mules 35
- Multān 376
- mu‘minūn’ / muslimūn* distinction 571
- al-Mundhir ibn al-Ḥārith, Ghassānid shaykh 92
- al-Mundhir III ibn al-Nu‘mān, Lakhmid shaykh 92, 165
- al-Mundhir ibn Sāwā al-Tamīmī, governor of Bahrayn 164, 439, 440, 164n
- Mu’nis al-Muẓaffar, al-Khādim 349, 350, 351, 355, 410, 565
- Egyptian campaigns 339, 340, 349, 564
- execution 352, 565
- al-Muntaṣir, caliph 270, 298, 300, 305, 308, 309 and assassination of al-Mutawakkil 300, 305, 306, 308
- and Egypt 557, 558–9
- Munūza 591
- al-Muqaddasī 448, 501, 502, 539, 554
- al-Muqallad ibn Muḥammad, ‘Uqaylid ruler 386
- Mūqān 467
- al-Muqanna’ 277, 477, 478, 479
- ‘al-Muqawqas’ (Cyrus, bishop of Phasis) 543
- al-Muqtadir, caliph xxv, 270, 339, 349–52, 383, 498, 502
- coinage 661
- decline of caliphate 11, 563
- and Jews and Christians 334
- revolts against xxv, 350, 355
- Murcia 586–7, 618–19
- Murji’a theological school 460, 464, 469, 691
- al-Murtaḍā, al-Sharīf 388
- Mūsā ibn Abi ‘l-Āfiya 616–17
- Mūsā ibn al-Amin (‘al-Nāṭiq bi’l-Ḥaqq’) 285
- Mūsā ibn Bughā 310, 311, 320, 321, 323, 560
- Mūsā ibn al-Mahdī *see* al-Ḥādī, caliph
- Mūsā ibn Muṣ’ab 533–4
- Mūsā ibn Nuṣayr 231–2, 548, 584–5, 588
- Mūsā al-Kāzīm 206, 326
- Muṣ’ab ibn al-Zubayr 441, 654
- al-Musabbiḥī 575
- muṣādara* (investigation of supposed embezzlement) 334, 349–50, 351, 357
- Musaylima ibn Ḥabīb 181
- music 400
- Muslim ibn Quraysh, ‘Uqaylid ruler 387
- Muslim ibn Sa’īd al-Kilabī 457
- muslimūn / mu‘minūn* distinction 571
- al-Musta’in, caliph xxv, 270, 300, 309–11, 320
- al-Mustakfi, caliph 270, 356, 362, 365
- al-Musta’li bi-Allāh 428
- al-Mustanṣir, Fāṭimid caliph 428, 578, 579, Pl. 16.38
- al-Mu’tadd, Umayyad caliph of al-Andalus 621
- al-Mu’taḍid, caliph (Abu ‘l-‘Abbās ibn al-Muwaffaq) 270, 324, 332–7
- and peripheral provinces 332–3, 335–7, 435

Index

- and Qarāmiṭa 337, 444
 and Ṭūlūnids 336, 561
 and Zanj revolt 324, 332
- al-Mu'tamid, caliph 270, 311
 and Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn 320–1, 560; attempts
 to flee to 322, 323, 560
 death 332
 and al-Muwaffaq 314, 320–1, 323, 560
 and Ṣaffārīds 316–17, 495–6
 and Ṣāmānīds 344, 498–9
 wazīrs 323
- al-Mu'tamin ibn Hārūn al-Rashīd 279, 322
 al-Mutanabbī, Abu 'l-Tayyib Aḥmad 537
 Muṭarrif ibn Shihāb and Muṭarrifiyya 426
 al-Mu'taṣim, caliph 270, 289–90, 291, 296
 Amorion campaign 302, 529
 and Caspian region 482–3
 coinage 659, Pl. 16.24
 and Egypt 290, 553, 557
 military emphasis 290, 296, 298, 299, 301, 335
 religious policies 294
 Ṣāmarrā' as capital xxiv, 296–7, 312, 675;
 al-Jawsaq (Dār al-Khilāfa) palace 297, 298
 and vizierate 298
- mutaṭawwi'a* ('volunteers') 317
- al-Mutawakkil, caliph xxv, 270, 298–300, 305–8
 administration of Ḥijāz 401
 and 'Alids 408
 and army xxv, 298, 299, 301, 308, 309, 310
 assassination xxv, 300, 305–7, 309, 535, 558
 authority 298, 299, 301
 and Baḥrayn and Yamāma 442
 ceremonial 298, 308
 coinage 659
 extravagance 299–300, 308
 Nubian campaign 302
 patronage of poets 308
 religious policies 297, 298–9, 301, 307, 557
 and Ṣāmarrā' 299, 308, 309, 675; builds al-
 Ja'fariyya/al-Mutawakkiliyya xxv,
 297–8, 299, 300, 675, 677; palaces 297,
 299–301, 308, 309
 succession arrangements 298, 308, 310
 and Turks xxv, 308, 309, 310
- al-Mutawakkiliyya/al-Ja'fariyya, Ṣāmarrā'
 xxv, 297–8, 299, 300, 675, 677
- Mu'tazila 291–3, 294–5, 298–9, 392–3, 598
- al-Mu'tazz, caliph 270, 300, 311
 coinage 659
 civil war against al-Musta'in xxv, 310–11, 314
 and succession to al-Mutawakkil 297, 298,
 300, 308, 309
 and Turks 308, 309, 310
- al-Muṭī', caliph 270, 356, 362, 499
 mutilation, judicial 338, 576
- al-Muttaqī, caliph 270, 355–7, 566, Pl. 16.27
- al-Muwaffaq 559
 al-Muwaffaq ibn al-Mutawakkil, Abū Aḥmad
 270, 332, 496
 and army 314, 323, 335
 and al-Mu'tamid 314, 320–1, 323, 560
 and Ṭūlūnids 322, 335, 560, 561
 and Zanj revolt 321, 324, 335
- muwalladūn* (Andalusian Muslims of
 indigenous stock) 588, 612–13
- Muzāḥim 559
 Muzayna tribe 154
 myth *see* legends
- Nabataeans 89, 90
 Nabḥānī dynasty of Oman 438
 Naḍīr, Banū (Jewish tribe of Medina) 158–9,
 164–5, 168, 169–70, 189
- Nāfi' (ruler of Oman) 436
 Nāfi' (scholar) 400
 Nāfi' ibn al-Azraq 459
 al-Nafs al-Zakiyya, Muḥammad 265, 271–2,
 407, 552
- Nahrawān
 battle of 207, 418
 canal 354
- Najāh, ruler of Zabīd 427
 Najāhī dynasty of Yemen 421–2, 427, 428, 429
- Najd 160, 181, 397, 408, 414, 438–47
- Najda ibn 'Āmir 418, 432, 441
- Najrān 417, 421, 426
 Christians and Jews 178–9, 417
- Nakhla, raid at 167, 186, 190
- Namāra, Ḥawrān 91
- Napoleon I, emperor of France; and
Déscription de l'Égypte 627
- Naqsh-i Rajab rock-cut reliefs 105
- Naqsh-i Rostam 48
 Ka'ba-i Zardusht 99, 143
res gestae of Shāpūr I 98–9, 117, 119, 123–4, 146
 rock-cut reliefs 76, 105, 143, 146
- Narbonne 232, 589
- Narseh, king of Persia 81, 99, 118, 151
 Paikuli inscription 98–9, 117, 119–20, 124, 148n
- Narshakhī 463–4
- Nasā 454
- Nasaf 477
- Nāṣir al-Dawla (al-Ḥasan ibn Abī al-Hayjā',
 Ḥamdānīd) 354, 355, 367, 537, 579
- Nāṣir al-Dīn wa-al-Dawla (title of Sebüktegin)
 372

Index

- al-Nāṣir ilā 'l-Ḥaqq 327
 Nāṣir al-Kabīr 500
 Nāṣir-i Khusraw 413, 447
 Naṣr I ibn Aḥmad ibn Sāmān-khudā, Sāmānid ruler 337, 344, 345, 497, 498–9
 Naṣr II ibn Aḥmad ibn Ismā'īl, Sāmānid ruler 345, 346, 347, 499, 503–4, Pl. 16.32
 Naṣr ibn Naṣr ibn Aḥmad ibn Sāmān-khudā 499
 Naṣr ibn Sayyār 239–40, 263–4, 457, 470
 Naṣr ibn Sebūktegīn 372
 Naṣr ibn Shabath al-'Uqaylī 286, 287, 491
 Naṣr al-Dawla (Kurdish Marwānid) 381
 nationalism
 in Islamic east 477, 483, 494
 modern scholars' articulation 628, 645–6
 Navasarika, Gujarat 241
 navies and naval warfare
 'Abbāsīd 302, 340
 against Byzantium 235, 511, 514, 568
 Egyptian 243, 544; Fāṭimid 340, 564–5, 568, 577, 617
 Vandals 83
 Negev 25, 31, 198
 negotiation and renegotiation, social 356–7
 Neoplatonism 126, 142n, 327, 346
 Nessana 25, 213
 papyri 509, 517, 519
 Nestorianism *see* Christianity (Nestorian)
 Nevo, Yehuda 643
 new men
 ninth-century 315
 Sasanian aristocracy 120, 122
 Ngila, near Tripoli; cemetery 609–10
 Nicaea 28–9, 235
 Nicephorus I, Byzantine emperor 281
 Nicephorus II Phocas, Byzantine emperor 538
 Niebla 592
 Nihāwand 196
 battle of 112, 113, 451
 Nile Valley and Delta 19–20, 34–5
 Nineveh 27, 112, 139
 Nishāpūr 264, 347, 374, 454, 476, 680
 coinage 662, Pl. 16.34
 Ghaznavid rule 374, 380
 learning 127, 304
 Muslim conquest 453, 454
 routes 28, 468
 Saffārid rule 316, 344, 494, 495
 Saljūq occupation 379–80
 under Sāmānids 344, 499–500
 Tāhirid capital 493, 499–500
 Nisibis 27, 132
 coinage Pl. 16.29
 in Roman–Sasanian wars 85, 86, 108, 134, 136
 Nīzak Tārkhān 455, 457, 462, 470
 Nizām al-Mulk 346, 477
 Nizārīs 434–5, 694
 Nizwā school of Ibaḍism 435–6, 437, 438
 Nobles, battle of the 233, 591
 Nöldeke, Theodor 635
 nomads 153
 in North Africa 30
 semi-nomads, Arab 57, 153, 324–5, 328, 398–9
 and settled populations 92–3, 157–61, 383–4, 385–6, 400, 413
 see also Bedouin; pastoralism
 'northern'–'southern' rivalry *see* Qays; Muḍar; Yaman (tribal faction)
 notables 79–80, 243–4
 Sasanian *dihqāns* 51–2, 54, 122, 344–5
 umm al-harāj 51–2
 see also elites
 notebooks, students' 631–2
 Noth, Albrecht 631, 636
 Nubia 302, 557
 and Egypt 541, 547, 559, 566, 568, 574
 Nūḥ I ibn Naṣr, Sāmānid ruler 346, 372, 504
 Nūḥ II ibn Mansūr, Sāmānid ruler 504
 Nūḥ ibn Asad 289, 498
 al-Nukkāriyya branch of Ibaḍism 598, 617
 al-Nu'mān III ibn al-Mundhir, Lakhmid ruler xxii, 138, 165
 al-Nu'mān ibn Abī 'Abd Allāh Muḥammad al-Maghribī, Qāḍī 331, 341
 sons of 571–2
 Numayrids 384, Pl. 16.39
 numerals 333
 numismatics *see* coinage
 Nūr al-Dīn Maḥmūd, ruler of Aleppo 663, Pl. 16.40
 al-Nūsharī, governor of Egypt 563
 nuts 32
 oases
 Arabian Peninsula 20, 399
 Iranian plateau 21, 32
 oaths 132, 356–7
 occultation (*ghayba*) of imams 206, 326, 327, 387–8, 614, 693
 Odenathus, Septimius, of Palmyra 77, 78, 108
 Odessos (Varna) 57n
 officials *see* administration; governors, provincial; scribes; vizierate
 Ogēlos son of Makkaios, of Palmyra 90

Index

- oil 27, 29, 31, 59–60, 62–3, 246
 al-ʿOla (formerly Dedan) 20
 olives 29–30, 34
 oil 27, 29, 31, 59–60, 62–3, 246
 Oman 430–8
 administration 401
 Azd tribe 432–3, 434, 435; *see also* Julandā rule
 below; Yazīd ibn al-Muhallab
 Būyids and 436–7
 and central government 397
 conversion to Islam 430–1
 governors 431, 432, 440
 and Hadramawt 423
 Ibāḍīs 418, 423, 432, 435–6, 438; imamate 433,
 434–5, 437, 443
 Iranian influence 58, 164, 430, 431
 irrigation 47
 Ismāʿīliyya 427, 429–30; *see also* Ibāḍīs *above*
 Julandā rule 431–2, 433, 434
 Khārijism 418, 423, 432; *see also* Ibāḍīs *above*
 landscape 430–1
 mining 35, 36
 navigation 432
 Qarmāī raids 444
 riddat ahl ʿUman 431, 432, 438
 Saljūq power in 438
 Sasanian control 58, 164
 society 430–1, 434, 435, 438
 sources' deficiencies 397, 430–1
 trade 68, 432, 434, 437, 440–1, 679
 tribal culture 430, 434, 435, 438
 oral tradition 153–4, 157, 185, 224, 631–2
 ordeal 132, 139–40
 Orientalism *see* scholarship (MODERN)
 Orontes basin 539
 Ortaias, Berber chieftain 582
 Otto I, German emperor 343
 Ottomans 373
 Oxford, university of 627
- Pabag, king of Persia 124
 paganism 509
 see also idol worship; polytheism
 pagarchs (Egyptian tax officials) 243, 544, 545, 551
 Pahlavi dynasty of Iran 143
 Paikuli 143
 inscriptions 98–9, 117, 119–20, 124, 148n
 paintings, mural 250–1, 298
 palaces
 Byzantine empire centred on 80
 coups; assassination of al-Mutawakkil as
 paradigm 300
 of heirs apparent 297
 linear plans of Umayyad 298
 location within cities 7, 273, 674
 palatine cities and complexes *see*
 al-ʿAbbāsiyya; Madīnat al-Zahrāʾ; al-
 Qaṭāʾiʿ; Raqqāda
 Sasanian 46, 105–6, 125, 139, 140, 361
 see also individual palaces, and under
 individual cities and rulers
- Palermo 319, 341, 611
 Palestine 19, 209, 220, 266, 384, 569
 agriculture 29
 Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn and 321, 559
 Chalcedonian Church 510
 cities 44
 economy 57, 64, 65, 198, 532
 Islamisation and Arabisation 532, 534–5
 Muslim conquest 192, 196, 198
 population 39, 509
 routes 27, 28
 Sasanian occupation 86, 88, 93–4
 Palmyra 76–8, 108
 inscriptions 76, 77, 78, 90
 under Marwānids 248, 259
 trade 76, 90, 248
- palynology 23
 Pamplona 342–3
 Panchatantra: 127
 panegyric 249
 Panjgūr 50
 papacy 678
 paper 687
 papyrus
 Egyptian exports to Europe 678
 texts: *bism allāh* on early bilingual 665;
 Manichean 102; Muʿāwiya's name
 and title in protocols 210; Nessana, on
 taxation 517, 519; as source on Egypt
 62, 100, 212–13, 243, 542
- parchment, texts on 100, 102
 Paris, university of 627
 Parsis 460
 Parthia 74–5, 129, 139, 145–6, 147
 Sasanian conquest 75, 99, 108; and Parthian
 aristocratic clans 115, 119–20, 144, 148
- Pass, battle of the 239
 pastoralism 29, 30, 386, 387
 and agriculture 30, 385
 in Najd 439, 441
 variation with environment 19, 29; *see also*
 nomads
- Pate, Lamu archipelago 681
 patents of investiture 472, 495, 496, 499
 patrimonial state, Weberian model of 574

Index

- patronage
 caliphal 249–50, 276, 283–4, 308, 410, 687
 in dynastic states 355, 693, 694; of Bedouin states by settled rulers 384–5; Ḥamdānīd 355, 537–8, 694; Ṭāhirīd 289, 315, 494
 of Holy Cities 403–4, 410
 of literary Persian 129, 503
 of poetry 276, 289, 308, 345, 537, 538
 political 120, 249–50, 320, 384–5
 religious 14, 43, 388, 410, 687, 693
 Roman 43
 Sāmānīd cultural 345, 503
 Sasanian 120, 129; of Nestorian Church 95, 130, 132, 133, 134
- peasants
 Egyptian, and administration 545, 549
 farming 32, 35
 Muslim conquests and 200, 208
 Sasanian 53, 117, 122
- Pechina 601–2
- Pella, Jordan 64, 671
- pepper trade 572
- perfume trade 57
- perjury 356–7
- persecutions *see under* Christians and
 Christianity; Manichaeism; Shī'ism;
 Zoroastrianism
- Persepolis 146
- Persia *see* Iran; Persian language; Sasanian empire
- Persian Gates 28
- Persian Gulf 27, 28, 50, 66–7, 432, 440–1, 678–81
- Persian language 13, 345, 502–3
 administrative use 345, 371, 375, 470, 502–3, 505
darī form 502
 dialects 502
 in dynastic states 13; *see also under*
 Ghaznavids; Ṣaffārids; Sāmānīds;
 Ṭāhirīds
 literary: Middle Persian 125, 127–8, 129; New Persian 345, 502–3, 505; *see also* history and historiography (Iranian) *and under* poetry
 Middle Persian, under Sasanians 99, 102–4, 125, 127–8, 129, 132
 Qutayba ibn Muslim allows use for prayer services 465
- Peshawar 376
- Petersen, Erling Ladewig 631
- Petra, Black Sea 136
- Petra, Jordan 509
- Petrus Patricius 142
- pharmaceutical texts 127
- phases of early Islamic history 11
 first, rise and consolidation of unitary state 12–13
 second, disintegration of unitary state 13–15
- Philip the Arab, Roman emperor 76, 105, 140
- philosophy 132–3, 638
 and Islamic religion 292, 295
see also Neoplatonism
- Phocas, Roman emperor 138, 142n
- phylarchs, Arab 90
see also Ghassānīds; Lakhmīds
- physical and strategic environment 19–36
- pigs 35
- pilgrimage (*hajj*)
 'Abbāsīds and 275, 277–8, 280, 361, 442
 attacks on 389, 406; by *ashraf* 413; by Bedouin 361, 383, 568; by Qarāmīṭa 383, 444, 447
 first 193
 food supply 568
 leadership 275, 280, 402, 409–10, 419
 Muḥammad and 191, 389
 pre-Islamic precursors 161
 protection 393, 444, 446, 568
 roads 277–8, 400, 442; Darb Zubayda 280–1, 669, 680; watering places 280–1, 403, 669
 to Shī'ite shrines 389–90
 'Umar's works for benefit of 403
 violation of sanctity 406, 407, 413
- pillars of Islam, five 692–3
- Pindos mountains 22
- Pirenne, Henri 600
- Pishdadians (mythical rulers of Iran) 146
- Pisidia 45
- plague 25, 42, 63, 408–9, 512, 611
 of 'Amwās 512, 513
- pluralism, religious, in early Islamic state 686
- Podosaces (Malechus, Bedouin shaykh) 91, 92
- poetry
 in al-Andalus 613
 in Arabia 400, 423; pre-Islamic 96, 161, 180
 as historical source 629
 Persian-language 345, 375, 503
 rulers' patronage 276, 289, 308, 345, 537, 538
 scribes' education in 333
- Poitiers, battle of xxiv, 232, 589
- policing 110, 518, 551
 Baghdad 310, 314, 492
- politics
 adversarial 690–2
 Arabian influence 7–8

Index

- climatic change and 22
 and disintegration of unitary state 13
 diversity, and cultural flowering 387
 in east 459–60, 466–89
 Islamic fusion with religion and warfare 14,
 173–5, 193, 683–4, 691
 kinship 173–4
 Late Antique influence on Islamic 37–8
 Sasanian cities' role 50–2
 sources 348
see also individual institutions, especially
 caliphate; imamate; kings and
 kingship, Iranian; kinship
- poll-tax
 Islamic (*jizya*) 212, 219, 417
 Sasanian 110, 129
- polytheism 161–3, 173, 174, 177, 178
- Pontic Alps 21–2, 30, 36
- population
 climatic change and 22
 irrigation and 33–4
 Late Antiquity 25; Roman and Byzantine 39,
 40; Sasanian 38–40, 47–8, 54–7
 plague and 25
 transfers: by Mu'āwiya 517–18; Sasanian 40,
 48–9, 53, 54, 55–7; *see also* deportations
- ports 341, 601
 Sasanian 50, 67
- Portugal 232
- possession, demonic 186–7
- postal services 26, 35, 61, 200, 277–8
- pottery
 African and Phocaean red slip 62, 63, 64,
 600–1
 amphorae 62–3, 678
 development 31, 682
 Far Eastern trade 678, 680–1, 682; Dusan
 ware 680; Yueh wares 680
 Indian 68, 680–1
 Iraqi glazed 679, 679–80, 682
 Marwānid trade 246
 Palestinian and Transjordanian fine wares
 64, 66
 al-Rāfiqa kilns 675
 Roman and Byzantine trade 27, 62–3, 64,
 65–6, 600–1
 Sasanian 46, 47, 48, 55–6, 65–6, 68, 69
- prayer 189
- precedence in early Islam 199–200, 204–5
- predestination 424, 525
- pre-Islamic period *see* Late Antiquity *and under*
 Arabia
- prisoners of war *see* captives
- prisons 165
- privy purse (*bayt māl al-khāṣṣa*) 334
- Procopius 101
- profit, excessive (*ribā*) 650, 661
- pronunciation xix–xx
- prophecy
 Arabian prophets other than Muḥammad
 181, 189
 continuous 254, 269
 Islam on men's rejection of 175–6
 Moses and Abraham in Qur'an 189
 Muḥammad's style 185, 187, 224
 Muslim fulfilment of Christian 8
 veiled prophet of Khurāsān *see* al-Muqanna'
- protection
dhimma 464, 571, 686
hajar/hijras 423, 425
ḥimāya agreements, Kurdish 382
 of holy places 410, 566, 568
see also under pilgrimage
- protectionism, Sasanian 65
- provinces
 histories 458
 organisation of Islamic 241, 242–4, 279,
 288–90, 467
see also governors, provincial
- Ptolemy (Claudius Ptolemaeus); *Almagest* 127
- punishment
 divine 176, 510
 judicial 338, 549; mutilation 338, 576
 Yemenite opposition to Qur'anic 425
- Punjab 376, 380
- Puran, Sasanian queen 118, 152
- Qadariyya 256–7, 258
- qādis* (judges) 241, 370, 381, 417, 686
 chief 298, 392
 of Egypt 542, 560, 571–2
 institution 208, 637
- al-Qādir, caliph xxv, 373, 402, 412
 religious leadership xxv, 362, 373, 392–3, 402
- al-Qādisiyya, battle of 112, 113, 196, 197–8, 200
- al-Qāhir, Muḥammad, caliph 270, 351, 352, 355
- al-Qāhira (now Cairo) 569, 571, 573
- Qaḥṭaba ibn Shābib al-Ṭā'ī 264, 274
- Qaḥṭan, Āl 156, 427
- al-Qā'im, Abu 'l-Qāsim Muḥammad ibn 'Abd
 Allāh, Fāṭimid caliph 342, 564–5
- al-Qā'im, Muḥammad, Fāṭimid caliph 562, 565,
 567, 617
- qanāts* 33–4, 50, 297, 669, 670
- al-Qarāfa, mosque of 573
- Qarakhānids 372–4, 378–9, 503, 504–5

Index

- Qārin (Persian noble) 454
 Qārin ibn Shahriyār, Bawandid 483–4
 Qārin ibn Wandād-Hurmuzd, Qārinid ruler 481
 Qārinids 479, 481–3
 Qarluq Turks 344, 500
 Qarmāsīn (Kirmānshāh) 381
 Qarmaṭ (Ḥamdān ibn al-Ash'ath) 328, 330, 444, 536
 Qarmaṭīs *see* Qarāmiṭa
 Qarāmiṭa (Carmathians, Qarmaṭīs)
 Baṣra attacked by 383, 422
 and Bedouin 328, 383, 384, 446
 al-Ḥallāj and 350
 historiographical bias against 445
 of Iraq 330, 347, 444
 messianic beliefs 265, 330, 445
 origins 328, 331, 536
 of Syria 337–8, 384, 536–7, 561–2
 Ṭūlūnid state attacked by 336
 use of term 330, 424
 and Zanj 324
 see also Egypt (Qarmāṭi invasions) and under Baḥrayn
 Qaryat al-Faw 678
 Qasī, Banū 587, 612
 al-Qāsim, governor of Egypt 550
 al-Qāsim ibn Ibrāhīm al-Rassī 326–7, 484
qaṣr *see* *quṣūr*
 al-Qaṭā'i' 321, 338, 559–60, 562
 Mosque of Ibn Ṭūlūn 321, 338, 559–60, 562
 Qaṭarī ibn al-Fujā'a, Azraqī ruler of Fārs 460, 487
 al-Qaṭīf 439, 444, 446
 Qatrana 247
 Qaynuqā', Banū 168, 189
 Qayrawān 231, 304, 599
 Abū 'Abd Allāh al-Shī'ī captures 330
 Aghlabids and 604–5, 606
 and Berber revolt 233, 234, 592–3
 buildings and town plan 604–5; mosque 604
 Christianity 609–10
 coinage 657, Pl. 16.4
 foundation and early years 583, 584, 601, 604, 671
 Khārijite attacks 234, 303, 342, 617
 palatine complexes near 330, 341, 604–5, 615
 'ulamā' 304, 342, 605–6, 610, 611, 615, 617
 Warfajjūma tribe and 593, 596
 water supply 604
 Qays (tribal faction) 156, 242, 253, 259
 and Kalb 518–19, 523, 527
 and Yaman 218, 253, 263, 302, 434–5, 550
 Qays 'Aylān tribe 167
 Qays ibn Makshūh 416
 Qays ibn Sa'd ibn 'Ubāda 163
 Qazvīn 336, 337, 370, 458, 465
qibla (direction of prayer) 189
 Qinnasrīn (Chalkis) 28, 196, 266, 525
 jund 242, 517, 592
qirā'āt (various readings of Qur'an) 413
 Qirwāsh ibn al-Muqallad al-'Uqayli xxv, 383–4, 386–7
Qiṣṣa-i Sanjan 460
 Qiwām al-Dīn, Būyid ruler Pl. 16.28
qiyās (interpretation through analogy) 294
 Qom *see* Qumm
 quarters, urban military 297, 312, 321, 546, 604, 675–8
 Quḍā'a tribal grouping 512, 513
 Quḍama ibn Ja'far 359
 Quhistān 449, 455, 467
 Qūhyār, Qārinid ruler 483
 Qūmis 264, 452, 467, 468
 Qumm 276, 336, 390, 459, 461, 694
 Muslim conquest 461, 463
 Qur'an
 'Abd al-Malik and 221
 angels in 190
 centrality to Islam 175
 as closed 687
 createdness doctrine *see* *miḥna*
 cultural and linguistic influences on 181–2, 223, 224
 exegesis 183, 184, 278, 423, 605
 inimitability (*i'jāz*) 186
 and *jāhiliyya* ethos 224
 language 181–2, 187
 modern scholarship 634–6, 641, 642, 643
 Muḥammad's experience central to 186, 190
 and oral tradition 185, 224
 pre-Islamic monotheism and 180–2, 223
 prophets in 189
 'Uthmān and 185, 204
 warfare emphasised in 189–90, 201
 writing of 185, 665
 CITATIONS: 2:61 178–9; 2:217 190; 2:218 190; 7:128 195; 8:9, 12, 17, 42 190; 9:19 190; 9:69 212; 26:214 185; 34:28 185; 40:15 185; 48:18–21 191; 72:2 185; 74:1–5 185; 81:1 185; 96:1–5 185, 186; 105 183; 108 181–2
 Quraysh, Banū 153, 156, 166–7, 169, 188, 430, 512
 idol worship 162
 Mu'āwiya and 214
 Muḥammad and 184, 191–2, 399
 power and status in Mecca 166, 399

Index

- and Sulaym 160
 trade 20, 57; leather 27, 57, 60
- al-Qurayya, near Mecca 166–7
- Qurayza, Banū 164–5, 168, 169–70, 189
- Qurra, Banū 578
- Qurra ibn Sharīk 243, 548
- Quṣayr ‘Amra 250–1, 526, 667, 669
- Quṣayy 156, 164, 169, 188
- quṣūr* (‘desert castles’) 246–7, 250–1, 526–7, 666–9
- al-Andarīn 666–7
- al-Bakhrā’ 247, 257, 666
- Ḍumayr 666–7
- Ḥumayna 262
- Iṣṭabl ‘Antar 666–7, 678
- Jabal Says 669
- Khirbat al-Mafjar 250, 526, 667, 669
- Ma‘ān 667–9
- Qaṣr al-Bahilī 457
- Qaṣr al-Bashīr 668
- Qaṣr al-Burqū’ 669
- Qaṣr al-Ḥallabāt 526
- Qaṣr al-Ḥayr al-Gharbī 250, 669
- Qaṣr al-Ḥayr al-Sharqī 247, 249, 526–7
- Qaṣr Ibrīm 568
- Qaṣr al-Ja‘farī 299
- Qaṣr al-Kharāna 526, 666, 668, 669
- Qaṣr al-Tūba 669
- Qaṣr-i Abū Naṣr 48, 53
see also Quṣayr ‘Amra
- Qutayba ibn Muslim xxiii, 238–9, 456–7, 468, 485
 conversion policy 464, 465
- al-Qutqūṭāna 165
- Quzdar 50
- al-Rabadha 400, 439, 447, 680
- al-Rabī‘ ibn Yūnus 274
- Rabī‘ ibn Ziyād al-Ḥarithī 453, 455, 459, 464, 465
- Rabī‘a tribal federation 154, 259, 523
- al-Rāḍī, caliph 270, 339, 354–5
- al-Raḍīyy, al-Sharīf 388, 402
- Rāfi‘ ibn al-Layth 283, 289, 473–4, 498
- Rāfiḍī Shī‘a 194
- al-Rāfiqa 275
 coinage Pls. 16.14, 16.20
 foundation 1, 2
 imports of Iraqi ceramics 680
 industrial zone 675, 676
 palaces 675
 plan 674–5, 676
 and al-Raqqā 1, 6, 275
- al-rahmān* as monotheistic marker 180
- ra’īs* (title in Qazvin): 370
- Rajasthan 240
- Ramaḍān xxi
- Rāmḥurmuz 450
- al-Ramla 242, 248, 569, 575
- Ranke, Leopold von 648
- ransom 136
- al-Raqqā (Callinicum/Kallinikos) 301, 336, 560, 566, 574, 680
 aerial view 676
 Ḥārūn al-Rashīd’s capital xxiv, 275, 529
 and al-Rāfiqa 1, 6, 275
 routes 27
- al-Raqqāda 330, 341, 605, 615
- Raṣad, Fāṭimid queen mother 578
- Rāshid ibn Sa‘īd (‘Ibn Rāshid’), Ibāḍī imam 437
- Rāshid ibn Shadhān (or al-Naẓr), ruler of Oman 433
- Rāshid ibn al-Walīd, Ibāḍī imam 436
- al-Rāshid bi-Allah (Abū al-Futūḥ) 412
- rationalism *see al-ra’y*
- Rāwar 240
- Rawḥ ibn Ḥātim ibn Qabīsa ibn al-Muhallab 275
- Rawwādids of Azerbaijan 381, 383, 458
- al-ra’y* (reasoned argument) 278, 291, 293–4, 686–7, 691–2
- Rayy (al-Muḥammadiyya)
 Būyid principality 348, 366, 367, 369, 370;
 conquered by Maḥmūd of Ghazna xxv, 373, 374
 in civil war 336, 474
 coinage 274, 657, 681, Pl. 16.16
 economy 50, 274, 680
 garrison 458
 Ghaznavids and xxv, 367, 373, 374
 governed by future caliphs 273–4, 336, 337
 Muslim conquest 452, 453
 routes 28, 468
 Sāmānids and 367, 500
 Sunbādh the Magjan seizes treasury 476
 trade 50, 274, 680
- Rayyo, al-Andalus 592
- reason *see al-ra’y*
- Recueil des historiens des croisades* 639
- Red Sea 541, 572
- regional variation in resources 11–12, 31, 44–5
- regionalism 13–15, 387, 449, 694–5
 ‘commonwealth’ model of state 13–14
 conversion to Islam and 466
 in east 458–67, 475, 489–505; *see also*
individual regions and dynasties
 hereditary governorships promote 304

Index

- regionalism (cont.)
 and high culture 15, 501–3
 Iranian eastern and south-western traditions 145–6, 148
 al-Ma'mūn and 304, 475
 in *al-mashriq* 449
 Roman 143
 Sasanian 68, 113, 123, 143, 145–6
 Umayyad period 210–11, 213–14, 249
see also dynastic states and individual regions and dynasties
- reliefs, Sasanian rock-cut 104–5, 139–40, 144
see also under Naqsh-i Rājab; Naqsh-i Rostam; Taq-i Bustan
- religion
 astral cult of Ḥarrān 509
 and caliphal authority 7–8, 194–5, 280, 291–5, 525, 685–6
 and city plans 674
 coin legends show ruler's orientation 648–9
 divine qualities of rulers 73–4, 104, 105, 114, 118, 273
 dynastic states and 358
 and ethnic identity 177–8, 534
 language change and religious identity 534
 pluralism in early Islamic state 464, 686
 and politics and warfare 14, 173–5, 193, 683–4, 691
 and state formation 683–4
 sun-worship 476
 syncretism 289, 302, 476, 477–8
 tolerance 317, 464, 494, 686
see also individual religions and under Arabia (PRE-ISLAMIC); Baghdad; Iran; patronage; Roman/Byzantine empire; Ṣaffārids; Sasanian empire; Ṭahirids
- requisitioning, Roman 79
- Resafa *see* al-Ruṣāfa
- resources 71
 competition over 174, 386, 387
 exploitation of physical 29–36; climatic change and 22
see also environment and under individual regions
- retrospective adjustment of ideology 299, 331–2, 690
- Rev Ardashir 464
- Rhine, river; barbarian crossing (406) 83
- Rhodes 197, 514
- Rhodope mountains 22
- ribā* (illegitimate profit) 650, 661
- ribāṭs* (defensive structures) 279, 319, 341, 344, 601–2
- rice cultivation 29, 32
- ridda* wars xxiii, 159, 160, 195–6, 440, 442
riddat ahl 'Umān 431, 432, 438
- riḡāda* (viceroyship) 165–6
- al-Risālat al-Qādiriyya* 392–3
- Rishahr, battle near 452
- ritual, early Islamic 180, 189
- Riyadh (Ḥajr) 154, 439
- road stations 280–1, 400, 403, 669
- roads 26–9, 200, 667, 669
see also postal systems; routes; and under individual regions and pilgrimage
- Robinson, Chase F. 636
- Roderic, Visigothic king of Spain 231–2, 250–1, 585
- Roman/Byzantine empire 72–97
 administration 73, 78, 212–14
 and Aleppo 538–9, 540, 573
 Andalusian contact 343
 army: composition 87, 88, 91; finance 60, 61; military roads 26, 29; quality 74, 86–7; size 78, 79; supply 30, 57n, 60
 Avar threat 136
 building and engineering 26, 80, 106, 129, 669
 caliph's personal leadership against 280, 336, 529
 cities 26, 41–5, 71, 79, 80
 citizenship 81
 climate 22–3
 coinage 30–1, 59, 61, 63, 78–80, 517, 651–3, 657, 663, 681; copper 61, 651–2, Pl. 16.2; gold 80, 657, Pl. 16.1
 economy, Late Antique 37–8, 59–64, 71, 72, 80; monetisation 30–1, 59, 61, 63
 elites 73, 78, 79–80, 81; and Muslim conquests 70, 78, 94–6, 198
 emperor's role 80, 141–2, 142n, 210, 250–1; *see also* individual emperors
 food supply 30, 33, 61; *see also* under grain
 frontier with Islamic empire 199, 306, 355, 510–11, 530–2; campaigns 278–9, 507, 529, 530–1, 569; Christians in 531, 533; *ghāzi* ethos 531–2, 538; *see also* Thughūr and Goths xxii
 and Islam 93–7, 652–3; influences on Islamic empire 8, 690
 and Jews 74, 509
 Khurramiyya alliance with 287
 law 690
 al-Mahdī exacts tribute: 279
 al-Ma'mūn's campaigns 290–1, 302, 529
 Manichaeism 131

Index

- Muslim conquests 70, 78, 94–6, 113, 196, 198;
 Byzantine inability to counter 511, 684;
 economic effect 71; *see also* Anatolia
 (Muslim campaigns)
 navy 511, 514
 officials 60–1, 79–80
 and Palmyra 76–8
 Parthian campaigns 74–5
 population 39, 40
 postal service (*cursus publicus*) 26, 61
 religion: Christianity xxii, 43, 78–9, 80–1,
 509–10, 515; Christology in Byzantium
 542–3; imperial cult 73–4; and
 Monophysites 95, 130, 132, 515, 533; *see
 also under* Syria
 requisitioning 79
 roads 26, 29
 as Rūm, in Iranian historical tradition 148,
 149–50
 and Sicily 611
 social environment 41–5
 sources on 4
 successes in mid-tenth-century 566, 568, 569
 taxation 43–4, 60–1, 61–2, 83; of land and
 agriculture 30–1, 79; third-century
 increases 73, 78, 79
 trade 27, 62–3; *see also under* pottery
 and Turks 136
 Umayyad campaigns 66, 218, 232, 234–6, 514
 western empire 74, 75, 81–4, 135
 Ya‘qūb ibn al-Layth and 495
see also under Africa, North; Arabia; census;
 estates; fortifications; grain;
 patronage; pottery; regionalism;
 Sasanian empire; villages
- Rome, city of; Aghlabid sack 611
 Rougga 671
 routes 26–9
 capital cities and 13, 28, 272, 516
 to Holy Cities 420, 440, 442, 447; *see also*
 pilgrimage (roads)
 Idrīsīd control 603
 overland long-distance 680
 Sasanians and 26, 66–7, 200
 shipping 26–7
 transhumance 381, 382
see also roads *and under individual regions and
 places*
- Rubin, Uri 631
 Rūdakī 345, 503
 Rukhkhāj 455–6, 485
 Rukn al-Dawla al-Ḥasan (al-Ḥasan ibn Būya)
 347, 348, 365, 366, 369, 501
- ruling families
 governors chosen from 119, 121, 401, 442
 Sasanian 114, 115, 117–19, 121; cults of
 members 114, 115, 118–19; women 116,
 117–18, 142
 Rūm, in Iranian historical tradition 148, 149–50
 Ruqīyya, Fātimid queen mother 576, 578
 Rūs people 681
 al-Ruṣāfa (Sergiopolis) 44, 338, 508, 510, 525, 674
 Russia 681
 Rustam (Sasanian commander) 112, 196
 Rustam ibn Mihr-Hurmuzd al-Majūsī 463
 Rustamids (rulers of Tāher) 11, 304, 318, 343
 fall 330, 616, 617
 religion 304, 318, 596–8
rustāq (administrative district) 241
 Rustāq school of Ibādīsm 435–6, 437, 438
 Ruzayq (Tāhirid ancestor) 289
 Ruzbān Šul, ruler of Jurjān 452, 460–1, 462
- Saba’ ibn Aḥmad 429
 Sābūr, town of 452
 Sābūr ibn Ardashīr 388
 sacred enclaves 423, 425
 Sa’d ibn Abī Waqqāṣ 196
 Sa’d ibn ‘Ubāda (Companion) 163
 Sa’d al-Dawla Sharīf, Ḥamdānid ruler 539
 Ša‘da 419, 421, 422
 Zaydī imamate 327, 424, 425, 426, 427
šadaqa (alms-tax) 402
 saddles, pack-, for camels 27
 Sāfaitic inscriptions in Syrian desert 90
 al-Saffāḥ *see* Abū al-‘Abbās al-Saffāḥ
 Šaffārīds 315–18, 336–7, 493–8
 and ‘Abbāsīd caliphate 493; Ya‘qūb ibn al-
 Layth xxv, 316–17, 323, 325, 495–6; ‘Amr
 ibn al-Layth 496
 Arabian operations 409, 435
 coinage 659–60, Pl. 16.25
 culture 345, 493–4, 503
 as frontier state 358
 and *jihād* 317, 495
 and Khārījites 316, 494, 495
 Maḥmūd of Ghazna deposes last 374
 Persian language 345, 503
 religion; no sectarian bias 317, 494
 and Sāmānīds 336–7, 344, 497, 498, 499, 500
 Tāhirīds overthrown by 315, 316, 494, 495
 and Zanj 324
see also ‘Amr ibn al-Layth; Tāhir ibn
 Muḥammad; Ya‘qūb ibn al-Layth
- Sagalassos 45
 šāh (Iranian ‘petty kings’) 128

Index

- Sahara, trade across 572
ṣāhib al-himar see Abū Yazīd Makhlad ibn Kaydad
ṣāhib al-nāqa see Yaḥyā ibn Zikrawayh
ṣāhib al-shāma see al-Ḥusayn ibn Zikrawayh
 Sahlids 285, 286, 295
Šāhnāmeḥ 124, 133, 150
 Saḥnūn ibn Sa'īd 606
Šahrestānīhā ī Ērānšāhr 50–1
 Sa'īd ibn 'Abbād, Julandā ruler of Oman 431–2
 Sa'īd ibn al-'Āṣ 455, 460
 Sa'īd ibn Baṭrīq (Eutychius) 541–2
 Sa'īd ibn al-Ḥusayn see 'Abd Allāh al-Mahdī
 Sa'īd ibn 'Uthmān 456
 al-Sa'īda (idol) 163
 Salamiyya, Mahdist state of 327, 328, 329, 338, 536, 562, 614–15
 Šāliḥ ibn 'Alī, governor of Syria 274, 529
 Šāliḥ ibn Mirdās al-Kilābī 383–4, 385
 Šāliḥ ibn Naḍr (or Naṣr) 489, 494
 Šāliḥ ibn Ṭarīf 595–6
 Šāliḥ ibn Waṣīf 311, 320
 al-Šāliḥ Ismā'īl, Zangīd ruler Pl. 16.41
 Sālīmī 430–1
 Saljūqs 379–80
 bureaucracy 345–6, 375
 campaigns and conquests: Baghdad 369, 579; Būyids 365, 369; Fāṭimids 578, 579; Ghaznavids 375, 379–80, 505; Kurdish principalities 382–3; Mosul 387; Oman 435, 438
 coinage 662, 663, Pls. 16.34–35, 16.40–41; honorific titles on 660, Pls. 16.31–32
 modern scholarship scarce 638
 Sunnism 373, 391
 al-Sallāmī 502
 Sallārīds of Azerbaijan 660, Pl. 16.30
 Salm ibn Quṭayba ibn Muslim 275
 Salm ibn Ziyād 456, 459
 Salmās 381, 382
 salvation history, Islamic 104, 150
 Sāma, Banū, of Oman 434–5
 Sāmānīds 289, 304, 344–6, 498–505
 and 'Abbāsīds 288, 296, 301, 333, 345–6, 497, 499
 administration 333, 345–6, 371
 Bukhārā under 289, 344, 371, 372, 499–500
 and Būyids 346, 367, 499, 500–1
 coinage 345, 499, 660, 662, Pls. 16.31–32
 culture 345, 501–3, 505
 defences 344
 fall 372–3
 as frontier state 344, 358, 493
 and Ghazna 372–3, 504
 ghulām army 296, 346, 371, 499–500, 502, 503–5; Ghaznavid family 372
 and Ḥanafī school of law 346
 Persian language and culture 289, 345, 369, 502–3, 694–5
 Qarakhānid pressure in 503
 rise and nature of rule 304
 and Šaffārīds 336–7, 344, 497, 498, 499, 500
 and scholars 345
 silver mining 662
 Sufism in region 351
 Sunnism 289, 295, 304, 346, 499–500
 and Ṭabaristān 484, 500
 and Ṭahirīds 289, 497
 trade with north 662, 681
 Sāmān-khudā (Sāmānid ancestor) 498
 Samaritans 509
 Samarqand
 coins in northern hoards 681
 fortifications 344
 mosque 673, 674
 al-Muqanna's support in area 277, 477
 Muslim campaigns and conquest 238, 456, 457
 Qarakhānid rule 374, 378
 Rāfi' ibn al-Layth's revolt 283, 473–4
 Sāmānid rule 497, 498, 499
 town plan 674
 trade 50, 680, 681
 Turkish threats and attacks 239, 457
 Sāmarrā', caliphate at 296–304, 312, 314, 675
 anarchy of 308–13, 314, 332, 535
 Baghdad during Sāmarrā' period 289, 297, 300, 310
 court life 297, 298
 distancing of caliph from subjects 297, 300, 307, 309
 return to Baghdad 300, 335
 Turks' political power xxv, 296, 297, 301, 308, 310
 Sāmarrā', city of 6, 296–8, 312, 652, 675
 architectural and decorative style 297–8
 army quarters 297, 312, 675–8
 mosques 297–8, 675, 677
 al-Mutawakkiliyya/al-Ja'fariyya xxv, 297–8, 299, 300, 675, 677
 palaces 297, 299–301, 308, 309, 675–8; al-Jawsaq (Dār al-Khilāfa) 297, 298
 town plan 297, 675–8, 677
 water supply 675
 al-Samḥ ibn Mālik al-Khawlānī 589
 Samosata 27–8

Index

- Ṣan‘ā’ 414
 eighth–ninth centuries 418, 419–20, 421, 422, 424, 426
 tenth–eleventh centuries 424, 426, 427–8, 429
 Abnā’ 415
 in first *fitna* 417
 governors 416–17
 Khārijite invasion 418
 mosque 674
 Muslim campaigns and conquest 416
 Shāfi‘ism 424
 Ṣulayhī dynasty 427–8, 429
 trade 57, 420
 Yu‘firī dynasty 422, 424
 Ziyādī influence 421
sanād (chain of narrators) 630, 636
 Sanām 477
 al-Ṣan‘ānī, ‘Abd al-Razzāq 629
 Sanbar family 445
 Sanjar (Saljūq leader) Pl. 16.35
 Sanjūl (‘Abd al-Rahmān ibn al-Manṣūr ibn Abī ‘Āmir) 621
 Santa María del Trampal (Cáceres) 608
 Sanutius (Shenute), Duke 544
ṣaqāliba (North European eunuch slaves) 620, 621
 Sara, daughter of Alamund, son of Witiza 586
 Saragossa 303, 585, 601, 618–19
 Sarakhs 286, 379, 380, 453
 Sardinia 232
 Sarī ibn al-Ḥakam 552
 Sasanian empire 98–150
 and Achaemenid traditions 99, 145, 146
 administration 50–2, 116, 122, 128–9, 461, 462–3
 agriculture 20–1, 30, 129, 132–3; *see also under* irrigation
 ancestors’ symbolic importance 99; kings’ association with 114–15, 118, 143, 146
 and Anērān (non-Iran) 143–4
 architecture and building 53–4, 105–6, 129, 132
 aristocracy 52, 115–16, 119–23, 461; after Arab conquest 70–1, 462–3; four status groups 115, 119; Khusrau I’s reforms and 110, 116, 122–3; and kings 51, 110, 111, 119–20, 121–3, 128–9, 147–8; lower 110, 122, 461, 462–3; military 76, 122, 123; symbols of rank 115–16, 120–1
 army 107, 129–30, 451; equipment and tactics 129–30; Kawād and Khusrau I’s reforms 110, 122, 123, 128; quality 86–7, 112–13; supply 30, 68, 69–70, 86; *see also* siege warfare, Sasanian *and under* cavalry
 Arsacid traditions 115, 147–8
 arts *see* culture and arts *below*
 Avar alliance 88
 border controls 58, 66, 110
 bullae 106, 679
 caliphate influenced by 8
 centralisation, political 51
 cities and urbanism 39–40, 45–57; royal foundations 48, 56–7, 65; town plans 46, 53–4, 105; transfer of rural populations into 40, 48–9, 53, 54, 55–7
 climate 55, 56
 coinage 69, 211, 652, 653–5, 656–7; copper 652; designs copied by Muslim mints 211; as historical source 5, 48, 56, 68–9, 679, 681; iconography 106, 118, 211, 653, 654, 656, Pl. 16.3; in Islamic empire 211, 653–5, 658; monetisation 30–1, 67; silver 36, 652, 653, 658, Pl. 16.3
 commerce 64–70
 court 123–8, 149; epic literature 102–3; etiquette 116, 125, 128; Khusrau I’s reforms 110, 116; nuclear and extended 119, 122–3, 124
 craftsmen 129
 culture and arts 111, 129, 132–3; decorative arts 105, 106, 118, 128, 132, 140; literature 100–4, 127–8, 129, 132; *see also* architecture *above*; history and historiography (Iranian); reliefs, Sasanian rock-cut; *and under* iconography; inscriptions; scholarship; seals
 economy 37–8, 64–70
 establishment of dynasty xxii
 genealogical table 151–2
 historical events of period 107–13
 historiography 46–7, 101–2, 140, 145–50; *see also* X^w *adāy-nāmag*
 ideology and identity 139–41, 142–4
 Islamic tradition influenced by 8, 643
 Khazar threat 137
 landscape 20–1
 language, Middle Persian 99, 102–4, 125, 127–8, 129, 132
 lineage 121, 132
 Muḥammad’s letter to shah, tradition on 192

Index

- Sasanian empire (cont.)
 Muslim conquest 65, 111–12, 130, 196, 449–58,
 684; reasons for success 73, 94–6, 97,
 112–13, 123
 national traditions 142–50
 notables (*dihqāns*) 51–2, 54, 122, 344–5
 and Palmyra 78
 and Parthia 75, 99, 108; clans 115, 119–20, 144,
 148; Middle Persian supplants Parthian
 99; traditions 139, 145–6, 147–8
 population 38–40, 47–8, 54–7; transfers 40,
 48–9, 53, 54, 55–7
 postal system 26, 200
 provincial government 94–6, 121, 128, 164
 religion 114, 126–7, 130–2; royal cult 115,
 118–19; *see also* Zoroastrianism and
under Christians and Christianity; Jews
 and Judaism; Manichaeism
 rise of Sasanian dynasty 75–6
 and Roman/Byzantine empire 8, 81–8,
 133–9; border controls 58, 66;
 commercial relations 36, 65–6;
 deportations of captives 26, 48, 54,
 64–5, 66, 106, 129, 130; diplomacy xxii,
 84, 86, 108, 109, 135, 136, 140–2, 149;
 economic effect of wars 64–5, 679;
 Roman activities elsewhere limited by
 wars 81–2, 83, 93–4, 135, 136; Roman
 payments to 66, 84, 85, 86, 110–11, 134,
 135, 136, 140; Rūm in historical
 tradition 148, 149–50; Sasanian raids
 56–7, 66, 138, 139; Sasanians' view of
 the west 142–50; wars 72–3, 75–6, 81–8,
 102, 108, 110, 111, 133–9, *see also under*
 Armenia; Heraclius; wars facilitate
 Muslim conquests 73, 97; *see also under*
individual rulers of Persia and Rome
 social environment and organisation 45–57,
 114–17, 461–3; *see also* aristocracy,
 notables *above*
 sources 4–5, 46–7, 98–107, 124
 symbols of rank 115–16, 120–1, 125
 taxation 49, 68, 69–70; cities and 51–2, 53, 54;
 independent, great landlords' 123; land
 30, 110, 116, 122, 129; poll-tax 110, 129
 trade 27, 49–50, 65, 66–7, 129, 679
 and Tūrān 134, 146–7, 148, 150
see also individual rulers and regions; Iran;
 kings and kingship, Iranian; *X^wadāy-*
nāmāg; Zoroastrianism; and *under*
 Arabia; census; China; courts; defences;
 deportations; education; Egypt; eras;
 estates; fortresses; grain; Hephthalites;
 hunting; inscriptions; irrigation; land;
 law and jurisprudence; legitimisation;
 Mesopotamia; Oman; palaces;
 Palestine; patronage; ports; pottery;
 regionalism; roads; ruling families;
 scholarship; sciences; seals; siege
 warfare; silver; succession processes;
 Syria; textiles; Turks; women
 satraps 128
 Sawād ('black land' of Mesopotamia) 20–1, 29,
 32, 200, 352–4, 360
 Sayf ibn 'Umar 630
 Sayf al-Dawla, title of Maḥmūd of Ghazna 372
 Sayf al-Dawla 'Alī ibn Abī al-Hayjā' ibn Ḥamdān,
 ruler of Aleppo 355, 384, 537–9, 566
 al-Sayyid ibn Anas 287
 sayyids, Zaydī 425–6
 Scandinavia 603, 662, 681, 682
 Schacht, Joseph 631, 632, 636, 639
 scholarship
 CHRISTIAN 105, 132, 509
 ISLAMIC 687–9
 Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn and 321, 322
 and 'Alid revolt of 145/762 271, 272
 Baghdad as centre 361, 388, 688–9
 in Baṣra 532
 biographical dictionaries 607
 caliphs' theological 525
 and classical tradition 291, 638, 688
 converts and their descendants 606, 688
 early 'Abbāsīd period 278, 280, 292–3,
 294–5, 687–9
 in Egypt 319
 in frontier region 321, 358, 531
 in Ḥijāz 400, 413
 in Kūfa 532
 Marwānīd era 252
 and non-Muslim learning 688
 and religious authority 252, 692
 Ṣaffārīds and 317
 in Sāmānīd emirate 344, 345
 Shī'ite, in Baghdad 388
 translation movement 291, 638
 in west 303, 318–19, 605–7, 611, 615, 617
 in Yemen 423–4
see also ḥadīth and traditionalism; Qur'an
 (exegesis)
 MODERN 625–47
 approaches to sources 2–4, 628–37;
 Descriptive 629, 633, 640–1, 642–3;
 Sceptical 632–3; Source-Critical 629–30,
 633–4, 648; Tradition-Critical 630–2,
 633–4, 636; conservatism 639–40

Index

- contacts with Orient 627
 early, to mid-nineteenth-century 625–8
 and Greek works in Arabic translations 638
 language studies 627, 640, 641
 and Muslim community 634, 635–6
 number of scholars in field 639
 on origins period 628–37, 638, 641, 642–3
 philological emphasis 640, 641
 polemical tradition 625–6, 638, 642
 positivism 3, 6–7
 practical and conceptual problems 637–47; balance 637–9; fragmentation of field of study 646–7; grip of traditional origins narrative 642–3; nationalist conceptualisations 628, 645–6; practical impediments 639–41; reductionism 642; secularising perspective 643–5
 on Qurʾān 634–6, 641, 642, 643
 recent developments 6–7, 641
 source problems 628–9
 survey texts 629, 633
 translation, sources in 627–8
 university chairs of Oriental languages in Europe 627
 SASANIAN III, 126–8, 132
 Schöler, G. 632
 sciences
 Islamic 638
 Sasanian 127, 129, 132–3
 scribes (*kuttāb*) 323, 333
see also Barmakid family
 scripts
 Hījāzī 665
 Kūfic 288, 659
 sculpture *see* reliefs, Sasanian rock-cut
 Scythopolis *see* Baysān
 sea level, rise in 23
 seals
 pendants, non-Muslim tax payers' 220
 of prophethood, Muḥammad and 184
 Sasanian 5, 52, 106, 118, 128
 Sebeos 186, 202, 203
 Pseudo 102
 Sebou River, battle of 233, 591
 Sebüktegin (Ghaznavid) xxv, 371–2, 375, 504–5
 Sebüktegin (Turk in Būyid service) 390
 security forces (*shurṭa*) 310, 492
 sedentarisation *see* settled populations
 'Seeker of Justice, the' (*ṭālib al-ḥaqq*, rebel Khārijite judge) 260
 Se'ert, Chronicle of 101–2
 Seleucia 53
 self-sufficiency 32, 59
 Sellheim, R. 632
 senate of Constantinople 78–9
 Septimania 589
 Sergiopolis *see* al-Ruṣāfa
 sermon at Friday prayer *see* *khuṭba*
 Sétif 615, 671
 settled populations 92–3, 153, 442
 genealogies 153, 157
see also nomads (and settled populations)
 settlement patterns 22, 38–40, 45
 Seveners *see* Ismāʿīliyya
 Severus ibn al-Muqaffa', Coptic bishop of Ashmunayn 571–2
 Seville 232, 585, 586, 592, 601, 618–19
 Sezgin, F. 632
 Shabīb ibn Yazīd al-Shaybānī 218
 son's revolt 254
 Shabir 452–3
 al-Shaʿbiyya 399
 Shabūhr *see* Shāpūr
 Shaddādīd dynasty of Azerbaijan 381, 382, 383
 al-Shāfiʿī, Muḥammad ibn Idrīs 293–4
 Shāfiʿī school of law 424, 693
 Shāh Malik ibn ʿAlī Yabghu, Ghuzz leader 379
shahāda as coin inscription 217, 654–5, 656, 665
shahānshāh; Būyids revive title 365
shahārija (Christian gentry in Mosul) 243–4
Shahnameh 124, 133, 150
 Shahrak, *marzbān* of Fārs 452, 462
 Shahrzūr 382
 Shahrbarāz, Persian general 112, 452, 462
shahrdārān (Persian local rulers) 461
 Shahrīyār (Bāwandīd) 481
 Shamūl 568, 569
 Shanga 681
 Shāpūr I, king of Persia 105, 106, 108, 114, 118–19, 151
 court 123–4
 and Manichaeism 132, 144
 Naqsh-i Rostam inscription of *res gestae* 98–9, 117, 119, 123–4, 146
 and Rome xxii, 76, 100, 105, 108, 140
 succession disputes after 108
 Shāpūr II, king of Persia 82, 108–9, 141n, 149, 151, 678
 instability after death 84
 Shāpūr III, king of Persia 118, 151
 'Shāpūr Cameo' 140
 Shāpūr ibn Shahrīyār (Bāwandīd) 481, 482
 Shaqq al-Taymara 656
 Shaqunda, Cordoba, revolt of 602–3

Index

- Shaqyā al-Miknāsī 594, 598
 Sharaf al-Dawla, Būyid ruler 366, 367
 Sharon, M. 636, 643
al-sharq ('the east') 448
 Sharwīn (Bāwandid) 481
 Shāsh 238, 239, 240, 467, 498, Pl. 16.31
 Shayba ibn Rabī'a ibn 'Abd Shams 167
 Shaybān ibn Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn (Ṭūlūnid)
 561, 562
 Shaybānīs 208, 259
 she-camel, the man with the (*ṣāhib al-nāqa*,
 Yaḥyā ibn Zikrawayh) 337–8, 561–2
 sheep-rearing 30, 35, 381, 382–3
 Shenute (Duke Sanutius) 544
 Shibām 422
 Shidda, great (Egyptian famine) 580
 Shiḥr 421
 Shī'ism 205–7
 'Abbāsids and 206, 255, 325–32
 'Alid tombs venerated 389–90
 in Baghdad 388, 389, 390, 391, 393
 'Bāṭini' epithet 374
 cursing of first caliphs 388, 389, 391
 and eligibility for caliphate 194, 206–7
 festivals 388–9, 391
 genealogy of imams 188, 265
 ghulāt movements 254
 gnostic ideas 254, 327
 Ḥamdānids and 354–5
 Ḥasanids and Ḥusaynids 405, 411–13
 and al-Ḥusayn 206, 215
 Imāmī or Twelver 14, 206, 326, 350, 390, 392,
 538; authority of imams 690; origins
 and early development 387–8
 Khārījite adoption 354–5
 in Kūfa 254–5
 library in Baghdad 388
 Maḥmūd of Ghazna's persecution
 373, 374
 al-Mukhtār's rebellion 216–17
 al-Mutawakkil's measures against 299, 307
 name 207
 observances 388–90
 persecution 373, 374, 558
 pilgrimage to 'Alid shrines 389–90
 Rafīḍī 194
 rise and tenets 205–7
 Sevener *see* Ismā'īliyya
 Shaqyā al-Miknāsī's ideology 594, 598
 shrines 389–90
 sources 325, 369
 in successor states 387–93, 538; *see also under*
 Būyid dynasty
 and Sunnism 10, 15, 194, 203, 387–93, 693–4;
 boundaries defined 299, 307; Fātimids'
 opposition 575; tensions 368, 388, 389,
 390, 391, 393
 and traditionalism 693–4
 Twelver *see* Imāmīabove
 and Umayyads 205–6, 215, 254–5, 256, 260–1
 'Uqaylids and 386
 and Zanj revolt 324
 see also 'Alids; Hashimiyya; Ismā'īliyya;
 occultation; Zaydiyya; *and under*
 imamate; state formation; Yemen
 shipping 26–7, 69, 341, 432, 572
 Late Antiquity 27, 33, 63, 69
 Mediterranean 13, 63, 572, 601
 Shīrāz 28, 366, 468, 494
 al-Shīrāzī, *dā'ī* 579
shirk (idolatry, polytheism) 180
 Shirwān 467
 Shukr 412
shūrā (consultative council) 194, 203–4, 262,
 349, 606
 Shuraḥbil ibn Ḥasana 196
shurṭa (security forces)
 Baghdad 310, 314, 492
 provincial governors' 241
 Shustar (Tustar) 461
 Stbukht the *marzbān* of Hajar 164
 Sicily
 Aghlabid conquest 318–19, 610–11, 615
 Fātimids and 341, 574, 615
 Marwanid raids 232
 Sidonia 231
 siege warfare, Sasanian 86, 129–30, 136
 Ṣiffīn, battle of 154, 204, 207
 sigillography *see* seals
 Sī'ird (Siirt) 382
 Sijilmāsa 303, 595, 616–17
 'Abd Allāh al-Mahdī in 330, 615
 Midrārid rule 343, 595, 616
 Sijistān *see* Sistān
 Sikadanj 263–4
sikka (inclusion of ruler's name on coin
 protocol) 316–17, 649, 659–60
 silk 27, 66, 68, 105, 106, 572
 Silk Route 67, 102, 131, 314, 679
 silver 57, 70–1, 199, 201, 245, 663
 mining areas 36, 662
 Sasanian 56, 65, 105
 Simeon Stylites, Church of St 508
 Simjūrī, Abū 'Alī 372, 504
 Simjūrī, Abū 'l-Ḥasan 504
 Simjūrīds 372

Index

- Sinai peninsula 19
 Sind 21, 28
 Ismā'īliyya 427, 429–30, 574
 Marwānid expansion in 237, 240–1, 261
 Muslim conquest 12, 218, 227, 249, 456
 pottery trade 68, 680
 Šinhāja tribe 618, 620
 Sinnabra / Sinnabris, caliphal residence at
 526, 666
 Siqlabīs in Fātimid government 576
 sīra (Prophetic biography) 191, 223, 400
 Sīrāf 50, 68, 674, 678, 679–80, 681
 Sirjān 453, 680
 Sīstān (Sijistān) 237–8, 316, 448, 467, 484–9
 ‘ayyārūn 316, 317, 489, 493, 494
 Başran settlers 459
 coinage 655, 658, Pl. 16.9
 conversion to Islam 464, 465
 as frontier province 467–8
 governors 463, 464, 465, 486; *see also*
 Tāhirids *below*
 histories 458, 468
 independent spirit 485–6, 494
 Khārijites 316, 325, 486–9, 494
 Maḥmūd of Ghazna's rule 374, 377
 Muslim conquest 453, 455–6, 461
 political history 468, 484–9
 Qutayba ibn Muslim and 457, 485
 routes 28, 485, 495
 Şaffārīds and 337, 435, 493–4, 496, 498, 500;
 Ya'qūb ibn al-Layth 316, 317, 494, 495
 Sāmānid rule 498, 500
 Tāhirids and 316, 488–9, 493
 Turkmen take from Ghaznavids 374
 Zubayrid rule 654, 655, Pl. 16.9
 Sitt al-Mulk 576
 Siyāwakhsh ibn Mihrān 452
 slaves and slavery
 African 559, 563, 572, 595, 604
 in armies 331, 343, 363, 500; 'Abbāsīd xxiv,
 287–8, 290, 296, 306; Sāmānid 346, 500,
 503; Tūlūnid 320, 321, 559, 563; *see also*
 ghulām; and under Turks (slaves)
 Berbers 231, 590
 Christians 343; *şaqāliba* 620
 coastal cities develop through trade in 601
 conversion through enslavement 251
 in Egypt 546
 freed slaves form Aghlabid guard 605
 Hindus 377
 Marwānid period 231, 249, 251
 Muslims enslaved 231
 plantation-style 323
 in Sasanian empire 117
 tattooing 590–1
 Volga and Russian trade 681
 see also Zanj and under Turks
 Smbat Bagratuni 102
 social criticism, Muḥammad's 187
 social environment
 early Islamic period 71, 521–2; in Iran
 461–3
 Late Antiquity 37–70; Arabian 57–8, 153, 154,
 155–6, 157; Roman 41–5; Sasanian 45–57,
 114–17, 461–3
 Marwānid period 251–3
 negotiation and renegotiation among
 groups 356–7
 western Islamic societies 600–10
 see also cities and towns; demography;
 Islamisation; population; villages
 social mobility 219, 295
 social status 174, 219, 295, 463
 precedence and kinship models 204–5
 Socotra 680
 Sogdia 467, 497
 diplomacy 238, 454, 455, 457
 and Hephthalites 109, 455
 Muslim conquest 238, 454, 455, 461; counter-
 offensives 239, 457
 trade 27, 65
 Turkish alliance 238, 239, 457
 see also Samarqand
 soil erosion in Asia Minor 25
 Somnāth, Hindu temple of 376–7
 Sophronius 509
 sources 2–7
 contemporary documentary 6, 628–9,
 648; *see also* inscriptions
 on early period 176–7, 307
 literary, secondary 176–7, 216, 629, 648;
 retrospective adjustment of ideology
 299, 331–2, 690
 see also archaeology; coinage; history and
 historiography; inscriptions; papyrus;
 reliefs, Sasanian rock-cut; scholarship
 (MODERN); approaches to sources);
 seals; and under individual topics
 Sousse 601, 611
 'southerners' *see* 'northern–southern' rivalry;
 Yaman (tribal faction)
 Spain *see* al-Andalus
 spice trade 20, 572
 Sri Lanka 679–80, 682
 stable isotope analysis 23
 Staraja Ladoga 681

Index

- state
 ‘Abbāsīd, founded on Marwānīd
 precedent 267
 commonwealth model 13–14, 358–9,
 361–2, 685
 early Islamic unitary 6, 11; rise and
 consolidation 12–13; disintegration
 13–15, 306–7, 685, 694–5
 and economy 13, 37–8, 60–2, 68
 Muḥammad and community as model
 10–11
 state formation 11–15, 397, 683–7
 dynastic states; types 358
 Marwānīd 215, 229
 Qarmāṭī 445–6, 447
see also under Bahrayn; Fāṭimids; Ṣaffārīds;
 Shī‘ism
- steppes 21, 30, 88
- stereotyping of the Oriental 627
- Strata Diocletiana 669
- Subkarā (Turkish general) 498
- subsidies, Roman and Sasanian 66, 91, 96–7
- succession processes
 conclave (*shūrā*) 194, 203–4, 262, 349, 606
 designation 205, 215, 272
 kinship principles 194, 271; fraternal vs.
 primogeniture 227, 228, 256, 271
 to Muḥammad 193–5
 Sasanian 115, 118, 120
see also under individual rulers
- successor states (945–1050) 360–93, 694–5
- Bedouin 383–7
- finance 363, 386
- Sunnism and Shī‘ism in 387–93
- tribal-based 363, 382
- typology 362–4
see also Būyids; Ghaznavids; *ghulām*;
 Kurdish principalities
- Sudan 541, 557, 595
 soldiers in Muslim armies 538, 559, 573
- Suevi 83
- Sufetula 583
- Sufism 14, 295, 351, 463
- Ṣūfiyya (zealot group) 552–3
- Ṣūfriyya (Khārījite group) 233, 433
- suftāja* (cheques) 649
- Sufyān ibn Mu‘āwiya ibn Yazīd ibn al-
 Muhallab 275
- Sufyānīd period xxiii, 208–15, 456
see also individual caliphs
- sugar 31
- Ṣuḥār 68, 430, 431, 437, 468, 670, 679
- al-Ṣulayḥī, *dā‘ī* 423, 579
- Ṣulayḥī state of Yemen 421–2, 427–9, 447
 and Fāṭimids 428, 429
 and Najāḥīs 428, 429
 and Zaydīs 426, 428, 429
- Sulaym, Banū 158, 160, 165, 408
- Sulaymān ibn ‘Abbād, Julandā ruler of Oman
 431–2
- Sulaymān ibn ‘Abd Allāh al-Kindī 486
- Sulaymān ibn ‘Abd al-Malik, caliph 213, 228,
 235, 239, 248, 521
- Sulaymān ibn ‘Alī 274
- Sulaymān ibn Hishām 256, 257, 258, 259,
 260, 261
- al-Ṣūlī, Abū Bakr Muḥammad ibn Yaḥyā 357
- suḷṭān*, title of 373
- Sunbādḥ the Magian 476, 480
- sunna* (doctrine of prophetic precedent) 298–9,
 637, 689–90
- Sunnism
 ‘Abbāsīds and 362, 373, 391–3
 definition of doctrine 392–3
 in east 460
 festivals 391
 Ghaznavids and 370, 373, 374, 391, 393
 al-Qādir’s leadership 362, 373, 392–3
 Sāmānīds and 289
 in successor states 387–93
 Turks’ association with 373, 390–1
 Umayyads of al-Andalus and 303
 veneration of first four caliphs 392
 in Yemen 421, 422
see also Shī‘ism (and Sunnism)
- sun-worship 476
- Suren, Persian noble house of 121
- surveying, land 243, 333, 549
- Sūs, Khūzistān 450
- Sūs al-Aqṣā, North Africa 232, 599
- Sūsa 48, 53, 54, 673–4, 680
- Susiana plain 24, 49
- Suwāriqiyya 158
- Syncellus, George 534
- syncretism 289, 302, 476, 477–8
- Syracuse 319, 611
- Syria 469, 506–40
 ‘Abbāsīd revolution 265, 527
 ‘Abbāsīd rule 266–7, 275, 306, 528–40; early
 Umayyad-led resistance xxiv, 266;
 al-Ma‘mūn and 286, 287, 529; and tribal
 identities 279, 301–2
 administration 242–3, 512, 517
 agriculture 29, 31, 32, 34, 246, 385, 506, 512,
 528; balance with pastoralism 539, 540;
 late Roman 59–60, 508

Index

- Arab migration and settlement 361, 412, 507, 512, 513, 577–8
 and Byzantium 510–11; frontier zone 199, 531, 533, 538; wars 507, 514, 529, 569
 Christianity 508, 511, 514–16; under ‘Abbāsids 530, 531, 532–5, 540; Chalcedonian 510, 533, 535; effect of conquest 512, 517; late Roman period 508–9, 511, 515; monasteries 509, 510, 512; under Umayyads 514–16, 518, 520, 521–3
 church buildings 508, 514–15, 521, 522, 530
 cities 44, 508, 512, 540, 671
 coinage: Late Antique 212, 652, 657, 663; seventh-century 211, 212; Marwānid 245, 655, Pl. 16.10; local ‘Abbāsīd copper Pl. 16.21
 culture 224, 506–8, 509
 ‘desert castles’ *see* *qasr*
 early Islamic period 209, 511–27
 economy 198, 199, 512, 516–18, 539; sixth-century 64, 65; stock-raising 35, 507; *see also* agriculture *above*
 Egyptian invasions and occupation 541, 573; Fāṭimid 569–70, 573, 575, 577–8; Ikhshīdīd 537, 566; Ṭūlūnid 321–2, 335, 535–6, 559, 560
 fortifications 27
 geography 506–7
 governors 275, 290, 512–16, 528, 561, 566
 Harūn al-Rashīd and 529, 531
 Hishām and 523–7
 irrigation 29, 33
 Islamisation 508, 511, 532–3, 534, 540
 Ismā‘īliyya 337–8, 536–7
 and al-Jazīra 506
 Jews 130, 509, 517
 landscape 19, 22
 languages 507, 509, 534–5; Arabic 507, 508, 509, 520, 534–5, 540; Aramaic 507, 509, 510; Greek 507, 508, 534–5, 540; *see also* Syriac language
 limestone massif of northern 59–60, 80
 manpower 512, 524–5
 map xxxv
 mining 35, 36
 Muḥammad’s campaigns 192
 Muslim conquest 12, 195–6, 457; effects 198, 459, 510–12
 nomads 361, 507, 512, 513, 577–8
 population 39, 40, 506–8
 Qaramīta 384, 446, 536–7, 561–2, 569–70
 religion: late Roman 509–10; *see also* Christianity; Islamisation; Jews *above*
 religious and political influence in east 460
 Roman province 57, 65, 89, 196, 508–11
 routes 27–8
 Sasanians and 65, 86, 136; occupation (620s) xxiii, 48, 88, 93–4, 138
 Shi‘ism 325, 538
 taxation 31, 514, 517, 519–20, 533–4
 tribes 518–19, 537, 539; *see also* army, nomads *above*
 Umayyads: caliphate 199, 226–68, 516–27; counter-revolts against ‘Abbāsids xxiv, 266; Marwānids 218, 226–7, 233, 242–3, 255–68, 533; Mu‘āwīya’s reign 512–18
see also army, caliphal (Syro-Jazīran tribal); *and individual cities and dynasties*
 Syriac language
 ecclesiastical use 510, 533, 535, 540
 literature 4, 46, 95, 101–2
 replacement by Arabic 535, 540
 al-Ṭabarī, Abū Ja‘far Muḥammad ibn Jarīr 2, 6, 629
 on caliphate up to earlier ‘Abbāsids 307, 359
 distance from events 2, 359
 fictional and embellished material 2, 271, 282–3
 on founding of Baghdad 1–2
 and al-Ḥallāj 350
 and Ismā‘īlism 325
 on Oman 397
 Persian material 150, 502, 503
 on political events 348, 359
 as salvation history 150
 on Zanj 323, 324
 Ṭabaristān 21, 28, 467, 468, 494, 685
 coinage 658, Pl. 16.18
 histories 458
 under Makān ibn Kākī 347
 under Mazyār 289–90, 295
 Muslim conquest 452, 455, 460, 461, 462; local rulers at time of 452, 462, 479
 Sāmānids and 484, 500
 Ṭahirids and 289–90, 493
 Zaydī state 327, 336, 500
 Ziyārīd rule 347
 Ṭabasayn 453
tabi‘ūn, in North Africa 594–5
 Tabrīz 383
 Tabūk 192
 Tadmur *see* Palmyra

Index

- al-Ṭaff 401
 Taghlib, Banū 154, 165–6, 354, 532, 538
 Tāhert 303, 604, 609–10
 Fāṭimid conquest 330, 616, 617
 location and plan 601, 604
 see also Rustamids
 Ṭāhir ibn ‘Abd Allāh, governor of Khurāsān 315
 Ṭāhir ibn al-Ḥusayn ibn Muṣ‘ab al-Bushanjī 490–1
 in civil war 285, 474
 death 475, 502
 Epistle to son on ideal government 492
 governorships xxiv, 288, 475, 490–1
 in Yemen 420
 Ṭāhir ibn Muḥammad, Ṣaffārid ruler 337, 497–8
 Ṭāhirids, governors of Khurāsān xxiv, 288–90,
 314–15, 490–3
 and ‘Abbāsids 285, 288, 301, 314, 482; loyalty
 287, 314–15, 490
 Baghdad security forces controlled by
 314, 492
 and Caspian region 483, 493
 coinage 491
 and culture 289, 315, 503; bridge between
 Iranian and Arabic 289, 345, 494
 decline 315, 344
 hereditary rule 288–9, 475
 al-Faḍl ibn Sahl alienates 286
 and Khuzā‘a 289
 Māzyār and 482
 religious orthodoxy 289, 295, 304, 316, 494
 rise and nature of rule 304, 314–15
 and Sāmānids 289, 497
 and Sīstān 316, 488–9, 493
 and taxation 482
 overthrown by Ya‘qūb ibn al-Layth 315, 316,
 494, 495
 Zaydī opposition to 484
 see also *individual family members*
 Tahūda 583
 al-Ṭā‘ī, caliph 362, 499
 Ṭā‘if 166, 167, 399, 413, 441, 444
 administration 401, 402, 442
 Ṭā‘ifa kingdoms of al-Andalus 621
 Takht-i Sulaiman 106
 Takīn, governor of Egypt 339, 564, 565
 Ṭalaqān 454
 Talas 344
 battle of 456, 457–8, 684
 Ṭalḥa ibn ‘Abd Allāh al-Khuzā‘ī 289
 Ṭalḥa ibn Ṭāhir ibn al-Ḥusayn (Ṭāhirid) 488–9,
 491–2
 Ṭalḥa ibn ‘Ubayd Allāh 167n, 169, 204, 405
 Ṭalīb al-Haqq (‘Abd Allāh ibn Yahyā al-Kindī)
 260, 407, 418–19
 talion, law of 157
 Talish mountains 21
 Talmud, Babylonian 130
 Tamim, Banū 155, 157, 158, 165–6
 distribution 430, 438, 441, 443, 486; in
 Bahrayn 164, 439
 religion 161, 208
 and Sasanian caravan 160, 165
 Tangier 233, 591, 601
 Tanūkh, Banū 512, 532
 Taormina 319
 Taq-i Bustan; bas-reliefs of Khusrau II 105,
 126n
 Ṭarāz 500
 Ṭāriḫ-i Bukhārā 465
 Ṭāriḫ-i Qumm 461
 Ṭāriḫ-i Sīstān 464, 465, 468, 484–5, 486, 498
 Ṭāriḫ-i Ṭabaristān 484–5
 Tarim plain 109
 Ṭāriq ibn Ziyād xxiii, 231–2, 585
 Tarragona 601
 Tarsus 28, 291, 529, 531, 539
 Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn and 320, 321–2
 religious and intellectual life 320, 321, 531–2
 Ṭūlūnid occupation 335, 336, 535, 561
 Tāsh, Abu ‘l-‘Abbās 503, 504
 tashbih (anthropomorphism) of God 293
 Taurus mountains 22, 28, 529
 mining 35, 36
 Tawwaj 452, 458
 taxation
 alms-tax 402, 425
 Arabic language used 208, 219
 Bedouin dynastic states 386
 of Berbers 590
 central government’s reliance on provincial
 31, 319, 517, 524, 551, 557, 588–9
 and Christians 464, 520, 533, 584; Coptic 544,
 548, 550, 551; Visigothic 586
 cities and 12; Sasanian 51–2, 53, 54
 coinage for 649–50
 continuity from pre-conquest systems 466,
 514, 684
 contracting out of (*muqāta‘a*) 312, 353
 converts’ exemption 252, 463, 464, 465,
 522, 523
 dihqāns as agents 470
 farming 312, 331, 353; in Egypt 557, 563,
 572, 577
 fiscal districts 333

Index

- flexibility of 'Abbāsid 276
 immunity (*ḡhār*) 312, 353
 Islamic; religious nature 175
 of land and agriculture 219, 306, 312–13, 352–3, 488, 684; assessment systems 277, 288; in Egypt 219, 319, 544, 545, 549–50; in Iraq 360; *kharāj* 312–13, 353, 371; Muslims pay 219, 549–50; on reclaimed land 323; Roman 30–1, 79; Sasanian 30, 110, 116, 122, 129
 of Muslims 243
 protests and revolts 276, 302, 454–5, 519, 552; in east 263, 481, 486, 487, 488, 489; in west 233, 603, 612–13
 reforms: al-Ma'mūn's 288; Marwānid 208, 213, 219, 220–1, 228–9, 237, 519, 523
 scribes' expertise 333
 seal pendants worn by non-Muslim taxpayers 220
 tithe (*'ushr*) 312, 352–3
see also poll-tax and under individual states, regions, rulers and dynasties
 Taymā 20, 669
 Ṭayyī', Banū 384, 512, 577–8
 al-Ṭayyib 429
 Tchalenko, Georges 59–60
 Tell Baruda, Ctesiphon 53
 Tervingi 82–3
 Tesfōn *see* Ctesiphon
 textiles 512, 555, 572
 Sasanian 106, 129, 132
see also individual types
 Thailand; import of Iraqi glazed pottery 679–80
thaman muḡlaq (absolute price) 649, 650, 651
 Thānesar, Hindu temple of 376
 al-Thaqafī, Muḡammad ibn al-Qāsim 240, 241, 376
 Thaqīf, Banū 166, 399
 theatres 670
 Theodimir, Visigothic dux 586–7
 Theodore Abu Qurra 534–5
 Theodoric the Amal 84
 Theodosiopolis 85
 Theodosius I, Roman emperor 81, 84
 Theodosius II, Roman emperor 80
 theology *see* Qur'an (exegesis); scholarship (ISLAMIC)
 Theophanes 96–7, 522
 Theophilus, Byzantine emperor 290
 Theophylactus Simocatta 101
 Thessaly 32
 Thirst, Day of xxiv, 239
Thousand and One Nights, The 284
 Thrace 22, 29, 32
 Thughūr 306, 336, 530, 531, 533, 537
 ghāzī mentality 531–2, 538
 Ṭülünids and 321, 335, 560, 561
see also Tarsus
 Tiberias 242, 259, 569, 653
 Tiberius II, Roman emperor 136–7
 Tibet 455, 501–2
 Tigris river 20–1, 34, 112
 Tihāma 414, 416, 420, 426
 Ṣulayḡīs and 427, 428
 Ziyādī dynasty 422, 424
see also Zabīd
 Tilak (Indian commander in Ghaznavid army) 378
 timber trade 681
 Timothy I, Nestorian Catholicos 535
 tin mining 36
 Tinnis 555
 tithe (*'ushr*) 312, 352–3
 titles
 caliphal 210, 216, 357, 686
 dawla element 356, 364, 365, 372, 373
 ikhshīd 339
 for *jihād* 375–6, 377
 Justinian's 141n
 ra'īs, in Qazvīn 370
 Sasanian kings' 118
 shahānshāh revived by Būyids 365
 sultān 373
 Tlemcen 233, 599
 tokens, Egyptian glass 662–3, Pl. 16.38
 Toledo 601, 607, 612, 618–19
 Berber attack 234, 591
 Muslim conquest 231–2, 585
 tolerance, religious 317, 464, 494, 686
 tolls, local 26
 Tolmo de Minateda (Albacete, Madīnat Iyyih) 608
 tombs *see* graves
 toreutics, Iranian 132
 torture 334, 338
 Toulouse 232
 towers, Sasanian 143
 towns *see* cities and towns
 trade
 archaeological evidence 678–81, 682
 bills of exchange and cheques 649
 Black Sea 27
 cities and 33, 48, 601
 and coinage 649, 650
 cost of overland 26–7
 and cultural development 12

Index

- trade (cont.)
 European 36, 341, 662, 663, 678
 foodstuffs 33, 246
 former 'Abbāsīd domains linked by 361
 Idrīsīd control 603
 luxury goods 27, 33, 65, 66, 182, 678, 680
 Parthian 129
 across political boundaries 58–9, 66
 protectionism 65
quṣūr and 667, 669
 Scandinavian 662, 681
 state contractors 63
 Umayyad long-distance 684
see also individual commodities; barter and
 payment in kind; merchants; roads;
 routes; shipping; *and under individual
 regions and Fāṭimids*
- traditionalism *see ḥadīth* and traditionalism
- Trajan, Roman emperor 74–5
- Transcaucasus 87–8, 94, 139
- transhumance 381, 382
- Transjordan 28, 64, 65, 385
- translation 208, 291, 638
- transliteration xix–xx
- transmigration of souls 254
- transmission of texts 630, 631–2
- Transoxania 21, 28, 448, 467, 468, 469–79
 'Abbāsīds and 685
 conversion to Islam 295, 464
 Day of Thirst xxiv
 Ghaznavid campaigns 378–9
 Marwānīd expansion in 238–40
 Muslim conquest xxiii, 227, 456–8, 460
 political economy 467
 political history 468, 469–79
 Qarakhānīd rule 374
 regional identity 295, 497
 revolutionary movements 475–9
 Ṣaffārīds and 336–7, 497, 659–60
 Sāmānīd emirate 289, 336–7, 344–6, 497, 498–9
 trade 50, 284
see also Bukhārā; Samarqand
- transport *see caravans*; roads; routes; shipping
- treasury 334
- treaties, form of 192
- Trebizond 28
- tree ring analysis 23
- tribal culture and society
 Arabia 397, 442, 686; historiography 153–6
 cities develop from tribal centres 41
 in dynastic and successor states 358,
 363–4, 382
 eponyms 153, 154
- Oman 430, 434, 435, 438
 partisanship (*'aṣabiyya*) 253, 346–7
 Syria 537, 538, 539
 tribal federations 153, 415
see also army, caliph al (Syro-Jazīran tribal);
 Bedouin; *and individual tribes*
- Tribunus (doctor) 142n
- Tripoli, North Africa 234, 615
- Tripoli, Syria 517
- Tripolitania 20, 582–3
- Tudmīr 592
- Tughj ibn Juff 336, 338, 562, 563
- Tughril Beg 379, 579
- Tukhārīstān 239, 372, 457, 462
 Muslim conquest 238, 454, 455
- Ṭūlūnīds 11, 304, 319–22, 335–6, 557–62
 army 321, 560, 563
 establishment of dynasty xxv, 319–22, 535
 fall 338, 340, 355
 Ibn al-Khalīj's attempted restoration 563
 Qarmāṭī attack 336, 338
 and Syria 321, 535–6, 561
see also Aḥmad ibn Ṭūlūn; Khumārawayh
- Tunis 234, 341
- Tunisia 12, 20, 600–1
see also Aghlabīds; Qayrawān
- Tūr 'Abdīn 535
- Tūrān 134, 146–7, 148, 150
- Türgesh confederation 238, 239, 457
- Turkic, Old; Manichaean texts 102
- Turkmenistan 12
- Turks
 cavalry and mounted archers 364, 368, 538
 conversion to Islam 500, 503, 505
 depiction at Quṣayr 'Amra 250–1
 diversity of peoples designated as 296
 Hephthalite alliances against Muslim
 conquests 455
 in Jurjān 460–1
 al-Ma'mūn's campaigns 492
 al-Musta'īn loses support 310–11
 al-Mutawakkil and xxv, 308, 309, 310
 al-Mu'tazz and 308, 309, 310
 Sāmānīds and 344, 499–500, 502; in armies
 500, 502, 503–5
 and Sasanians 88, 111, 113, 137, 454
 sheep rearing 382–3
 slaves 344, 489, 493, 503; in 'Abbāsīd army
 xxiv, 287–8, 290, 296; in other Muslim
 armies 368, 500, 502, 503–5, 577, 579
 Sogdian alliance against Muslim
 conquest 457
 Sunnism 373, 390–1

Index

- Western, in Late Antiquity 88, 94, 111, 136, 137, 139
see also army, caliphal (Turkish corps); Ghaznavids; *ghulam*; Ghuzz Turkmen; Qarakhānids; Qarluq Turks; Saljūqs; Türgesh confederation; Ushrūsana
- Ṭūs 283, 390, 454
 al-Ṭūsī, Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥasan 388
 Tustar 450
 al-Tustārī, Abū Sa'd 578
 Tutush ibn Alp Arslan 387
 Tūzūn 354, 355–7, 365
 Tyana 235
 Tyre 517
- ‘Ubayd Allāh, Faṭimid *see* ‘Abd Allāh al-Mahdī
 ‘Ubayd Allāh ibn al-Ḥabḥāb 233, 243, 549, 550, 591
 ‘Ubayd Allāh ibn al-Sarī ibn al-Ḥakam 286, 287, 552, 553
 ‘Ubayd Allāh ibn Sulaymān ibn Wahb 332
 ‘Ubayd Allāh ibn Ṭāhir 411
 ‘Ubayd Allāh ibn Yahyā ibn Khāqān 309, 323
 ‘Ubayd Allāh ibn Ziyād 456
 Uchi Maius (Henchir al-Douamis) 671, 672
 Uḥud, battle of 190–1
 Uḥud, Mount; cult of al-Sa'īda 163
 ‘Ukāz fair 161
 Ukhayḍir, palace of 298
 Ukhayḍir dynasty 409, 443, 444, 446–7
 ‘Ukkāsha ibn Ayyūb al-Fazārī 592
 ‘ulamā’ *see* *ḥadīth* and traditionalism; scholarship (ISLAMIC)
- ‘Umān *see* Oman
 ‘Umar I ibn al-Khaṭṭāb, caliph xxiii, 208, 229, 403, 431, 439
 administration 199–200, 208
 assassination 453
 conquests xxiii, 194, 196, 450–1; and booty 199–200, 208
 genealogy 169
 and non-Muslims 299, 417
 Shī'a and 205–6, 388, 389, 391
 and succession procedures 194, 203–4
 and Yemen 416–17
 ‘Umar II ibn ‘Abd al-‘Azīz, caliph xxiv, 213, 228–9, 418, 432–3, 525, 589
 Byzantine campaigns xxiii, 235
 justice and reforms 228–9, 418
 and religion 228–9, 464, 522, 525
 and Transoxania 239, 464
 ‘Umar ibn ‘Abbās, governor of Sīstān 486
 ‘Umar ibn al-‘Alā’ 480, Pl. 16.18
 ‘Umar ibn Ḥaḥṣūn 612
- ‘Umar ibn Nabḥān 436
 al-‘Umarī (Egyptian rebel) 559
 ‘Umayr ibn Sulmiyy 441
 Umayyads
 of al-Andalus *see under* al-Andalus caliphate 226–68, 516–27; ‘Abbāsids compared with 301–2; extent of empire 684; *see also individual caliphs* genealogies 169, 188, 213, 597
 in Ḥijāz 401, 405, 406; and Medina 401, 406; and Muḥammad 513
 in Syria 226–68, 516–17, 527
see also individual caliphs, and topics throughout index
- Umm al-Raṣāṣ; Church of St Stephen 530
umma (community) 189
ummal al-ḥarāj (notables) 51–2
 unitary state 6, 11
 rise and consolidation 12–13
 disintegration 13–15, 306–7, 685, 694–5
 universalism 226–7, 230, 273, 322, 616
 universities
 modern 627
 Nestorian, of Jundīshāpūr 105, 132
 al-‘Unṣurī, Abū ‘l-Qāsim Ḥasan 375
 Ūnūjūr ibn Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj (Ikshhīdīd) 562, 566
 Ūq 487–8
 ‘Uqaylids of Mosul 363, 383–4, 385, 386–7
 coinage 660, Pl. 16.29
 external relations 384, 386, 387, 446
 religious stance 384, 386, 444
 al-‘Uqayr 446
 ‘Uqba ibn Nāfi’ 197, 583, 604
 descendants 593
 Uqhuwāna, battle of 577–8
 al-Urdunn 242, 517
 ‘Urwa ibn al-Zubayr 400
 ‘ushr (tithe) 312, 352–3
 Ushrūsana 240, 289–90, 344, 467, 492, 500
see also Afshīn
ustādḥ (title) 568
 Ustādhsīs, revolt in Bādghīs area 476–7
 Utāmish (Turkish commander) 310
 ‘Utba son of Rabī'a ibn ‘Abd Shams 167
 al-‘Utbi, Abū ‘l-Ḥusayn (vizier) 504
 ‘Uthmān ibn ‘Affān, caliph xxiii, 169, 203–4, 205, 208
 assassination xxiii, 204, 400, 516, 547; *see also fitnas* (first)
 Ḥijāz under 399, 403
 and Qur'an 185, 204
 Shī'ite and Khārijite rejection 205–6, 391

Index

- ‘Uthmān ibn al-Huwayrith 164n
 ‘Uthmān ibn Nahik al-‘Akkī 274
 Uwāl 446
 ‘Uyayna ibn Ḥiṣn 160–1
- Vaballathus, ruler of Palmyra 77
 Valencia 60r
 Valens, Roman emperor 43, 82–3
 Valentinian, Roman emperor 43, 81
 Valerian, Roman emperor xxii, 76, 105, 108
 Vandals 83
 conquest of North Africa xxii, 83
 kingdom 27, 83, 581, 582, 671
 Varna (Odessos) 57n
 vegetable production 29, 32, 34
 Veh-az-antiok-Khusrau 65
 Via Egnatia 29
 Vikings 681
 villages
 cities’ relationship with 41, 45
 in Egypt 544–5, 557
 late Roman empire 45, 59–60
vindices 43
 Visigoths *see under* al-Andalus
 visual art 106, 250–1, 298
 see also architecture; decorative arts;
 frescoes; iconography; reliefs,
 Sasanian rock-cut
- viticulture 34
 vizierate 274, 281–2, 298, 369
 laqab on coins 660, Pl. 16.27
 and *muṣādara* procedure 334, 349–50, 351, 357
 see also individual viziers’ names
- Volga region 237, 662, 681
 Volubilis (Walīla) 598
 volunteer fighters 317, 341, 344–5, 358, 376
 vows 356–7
- Wādī al-Qurā 20, 399
 Wādī Sirḥān 669
 Wahb ibn Munabbih 418
 Wahrām I, king of Persia 124–5, 132, 151, 683
 Wahrām II, king of Persia 132, 151
 Wahrām III, king of Persia 99, 118, 151
 Wahrām V Gor, king of Persia 84, 134, 151
 Wahrām VI Chobin, king of Persia III, 137,
 148, 152, 498
 al-Wahṭ, estate of ‘Amr ibn al-‘Āṣ 167
 Wāj al-Rūdh 452
 Walakhsh, king of Parthia 145
 al-Walīd I ibn ‘Abd al-Malik, caliph xxiii, 213,
 227–8, 249, 403–4
 campaigns 218, 238–9, 249
 and Christianity 522, 587
 and Egypt 230, 548
 and governors’ independence 232, 585
 mosques 227, 257, 403, 521, 674
 taxation 519–20
 al-Walīd II ibn Yazīd, caliph 213, 229–30, 234,
 236, 250, 256–7
 accession 229, 255–8
 assassination 247, 257, 593
 succession dispute after death 256–7; *see also fitnas* (third)
- al-Walīd ibn al-Walīd ibn al-Mughīra 167
 Walīla (Volubilis) 598
 Walila confederation 304
 walls, defensive 42, 276, 604
 Walwālīj Pl. 16.35
 Wandā-Umīd, Qārinid ruler 481, 482
 Wandād-Hurmuzd, Qārinid ruler 481
 Wansbrough, John 632, 635, 641, 643
 al-Wāqīdī, Abū ‘Abd Allāh Muḥammad 156,
 400, 630
 Waqīla, son of Witiza 585, 586
 Warāqa ibn Nawfal 186
 Warfajjūma (Berber tribe) 593, 596
 warfare
 economic effect 31, 63, 71, 167, 360, 512, 309n
 elephants used in 374, 375
 forbidden months 190
 Islamic fusion with religion 14, 173–5, 193,
 683–4, 691
 Qur’ānic emphasis on 189–90, 201
 see also armies; army, caliphal; mercenaries;
 navies and naval warfare; siege
 warfare
 warner-prophet, Muḥammad as 185, 187, 224
 warriors for the faith *see ghāzīs*
 Waṣīf, chamberlain 309, 310, 311
 Wāsiṭ 324, 354, 367, 393, 657
 garrison 218, 264
 mosque 673, 673, 674
 al-Musta’in’s death at 311, 320
wasiyya (designation of succession) 272
 water supplies
 in cities 41, 42, 50, 604, 670; Sāmarrā’ 300, 675
 law on water rights 493
 on pilgrimage roads 280–1, 403, 669
 at *quṣūr* 667–9
 see also irrigation; *qanāts*
- al-Wāthiq, caliph 270, 294, 297, 298, 408, 443
 Watt, W. Montgomery 630, 639
 Wayhind, Hindushāhid rulers of 376
wazīrs see vizierate
 Weber, Max 574

Index

- Weh-Andiyok-Shabuhr *see* Jundīshāpūr
 Weh-Shāpūr, chief priest 127
 weights and measures 208, 220, 245
 Weil, Gustav 629
 welfare institutions, Qarmāṭī 445
 Wellhausen, Julius 630, 640–1
 west 242, 581–621
 ‘Abbāsīd rule 234, 599, 685
 caliphates 613–21
 eastern ideologies and dynasties 593–600
 landlocked landscape, medieval 600, 601–2
 in Late Antiquity 74, 75, 81–4, 135, 600–1
 map xxxvii
 Marwānīd rule 230–4, 260
 Muslim conquests 581–9, 600–1
 societies after conquests 600–10
 see also individual states; dynasties and rulers
 wheat 32, 167n, 246
 wilāya/wilāyāt *see* provinces
 wine 27, 62–3, 246
 wisdom literature, Middle Persian (*andarz*
 texts) 125
 Wistahm 118
 Witiza, sons of 585, 586
 Wizarišn ī Čatrang ud nihišn ī nēw-ardaxšīr 126
 women 187, 259, 404, 445
 royal: Fāṭimīd 576, 578; Roman 142;
 Sasanian 116, 117–18, 142
 woodlands 25, 29, 35
 workforce *see* labour
 world system theory 59n
 writing 153–4, 157, 185
 see also inscriptions; scripts
 Wushmgīr ibn Ziyār 347
- X^wadāy-nāmag* (Middle Persian ‘Book of
 lords’) 103, 115, 127, 133, 145–50
xwarrah (Middle Persian; ‘divine grace’ of
 kings) 114, 118
- Yabghu Khan, ‘viceroy’ of Turkic empire 139
 Yaḥmad tribal confederation 434
 Yaḥyā IV, Idrīsīd ruler 616
 Yaḥyā ibn ‘Abd Allāh (al-Daylamī)
 280, 484
 Yaḥyā ibn ‘Abd Allāh al-Sabbāq 419
 Yaḥyā ibn Asad, Sāmānīd ruler 289, 498
 Yaḥyā ibn al-Ḥusayn al-Ḥasanī (al-Ḥādī ilā
 ‘l-Ḥaqq) 327, 424–5, 427
 Yaḥyā ibn Karīb 419
 Yaḥyā ibn Khālīd al-Barmakī 281–2
 Yaḥyā ibn Yaḥyā al-Laythī 606
 Yaḥyā ibn Zayd ibn ‘Alī 255
- Yaḥyā ibn Zikrawayh (*ṣāḥīb al-nāqa*, ‘the man
 with the she-camel’) 337–8, 561–2
 Ya‘lā ibn Umayya 416
 Yamāma 159, 181, 438–47
 governors 417, 431, 442
 religious groups 161, 418, 427, 441
 trade routes 439; security 160, 165, 420
 Ukhayḍir dynasty 409, 443, 444, 446–7
 Yaman (area) *see* Yemen
 Yaman (tribal faction) 156
 and ‘Abbāsīds 523, 528
 and Qays 218, 253, 263, 302, 434–5, 550
 and Yazīd III 256–8
 Yanbu‘ 405
 Ya‘qūb ibn Killis 568, 570, 571–3
 Ya‘qūb ibn al-Layth al-Ṣaffār 315–18, 336,
 494–6, 497
 challenge to ‘Abbāsīd caliphate 316–17, 325,
 495–6; defeat at Dayr al-‘Āqūl xxv, 316,
 323, 495–6
 coinage 659–60
 and Ḥijāz 409
 and *jihād* 317, 495
 plebeian origins 493, 494
 Ṭahirīds overthrown by 315, 316, 494, 495
 al-Ya‘qūbī, Aḥmad ibn Abī Ya‘qūb 272, 414,
 492, 501–2
 Yāqūt, ruler of Fārs 364–5
 Yārjūkh 559
 Yarmūk, battle of the 95, 196, 511, 512
 Yathrib (pre-Islamic name of Medina) 167,
 173, 399
 Yawm al-Mushaqqar, battle of 158
 Yazd 28
 Yazdegerd I, king of Persia 84, 133–4, 151
 Yazdegerd II, king of Persia 84, 151
 Yazdegerd III, king of Persia 111–12, 152, 451,
 453–4
 assassination xxiii, 112, 196, 455, 461, 653–4
 son’s efforts to restore monarchy fail 461–2
 Yazīd I ibn Mu‘āwiya, caliph 205, 213, 215, 456,
 517, 518, 525
 and Ḥijāz 402, 406, 518
 and al-Ḥusayn xxiii, 215, 406
 Yazīd II ibn ‘Abd al-Malik, caliph 213, 228, 229,
 239, 256, 522
 Yazīd III ibn al-Walīd, caliph 213, 256–8
 Yazīd ibn ‘Abd Allāh al-Turkī 559
 Yazīd ibn Abī Muslim 590–1
 Yazīd ibn Abī Sufyān 513
 Yazīd ibn Ḥātim al-Muhallabī 275, 303,
 551–2
 Yazīd ibn Jarīr 420

Index

- Yazīd ibn al-Muhallab xxiv, 253, 432–3, 460–1, 480
- Yāzīmān, governor of Tarsus 321–2, 335
- al-Yazīrī, Abū Muḥammad al-Ḥasan 578–9
- Yemen 414–30
 ‘Abbāsīd rule 419–21
 Abnā’ 415
 administration 244, 397, 401, 440
 Christianity 161, 178–9
 dynasties, independent: non-sectarian 421–2; sectarian 15, 421, 422–30; *see also* Ibāḍiyya and Ismā‘īliyya below, and Najāhī dynasty; Ṣulayhī state; Yu‘firī dynasty; Zaydiyya (in Yemen); Ziyādīs
- Ethiopian invasions 428
 and Fāṭimids 427
 geographical divisions 414–15
 Ḥimyarite dynasties 424
 Ibāḍiyya 418–19, 434, 436
 import of Iraqi glazed pottery 679–80
 Islamisation 415–16
 Ismā‘īliyya 421–2, 424, 426–30, 614; *see also* Ṣulayhī state
- Jews 161, 415, 417
 Khārījism 407, 414, 418
 landscape 20, 414
 Marwānīd conquest and rule 244, 418
 modern scholarship lacking 638
 Muḥammad and 415
 Muslim conquest 418; and role in further conquests 416, 546
 pre-Islamic period 414, 417, 423
 Rāshidūn and 416–17
 Sasanians and Romans and 58, 87–8, 160, 164, 165
 scholars 423, 424
 Shī‘ism 15, 286–7, 414, 422–3; *see also* Ibāḍiyya; Ismā‘īliyya above
- social structures 414, 415, 417, 423
 Sunnī dynasties 421, 422
- Yu‘firī ibn ‘Abd al-Raḥmān al-Ḥiwālī 422
- Yu‘firī dynasty of Yemen 422, 424, 427
- Yūnus ibn Ilyās 596
- Yūsuf ibn ‘Umar al-Thaqafī 244
- Yūsuf ibn al-Wajīh, ruler of Oman 436
- Yūsuf al-Fihrī 303, 593–4
- Zāb, Greater 381
 battle of the Zāb 264, 527
- Zāb, Lesser 381
- Zabīd 421–2, 424, 427, 428, 679–80
- Zabul 464
- Zābulistān 237–8, 316, 494
- Zadhūya, *marzbān* of Sarakhs 462
- Zagros region 21, 28, 49, 467
 economic activity 30, 36, 450
 foothills 30, 450
 Kurds of 380; dynastic states 381, 382
 Muslim conquest 450, 451
 natural frontier 112, 450
- al-Zāhir li-ī‘zāz Dīn Allāh, Fāṭimīd 576, 578
- Zāhira or Jawf, Oman 430
- zakāt (alms-tax) 402, 425
- Zām 454
- al-Zamakhsharī, Abū ‘l-Qāsim Maḥmūd 413
- Zamasp, shah of Persia 85, 152
- Zamīndāwar 455–6, 485
- Zanāta Berber tribal confederation 342, 620
- al-Zanātī, Khālīd ibn Ḥumayd 591
- Zand-i Vohuman Yasht 460
- zandaqa (heresy) 277
- Zangids; coinage 663, Pls. 16.40–41
- Zanj revolt xxv, 317, 323–5, 443, 559
 Arab supporters 324–5, 409
 defeat xxv, 332
 messianism 558
 al-Muwaffaq and 321, 335, 560
 Shī‘ism 324, 325, 558
- al-Zāra 164
- Zarafshan valley 477
- Zaranj 374, 458, 485, 486, 487, 488
 ‘ayyārūn 316, 317
 Muslim takeover 453, 455, 468
 routes 28, 468
 Sāmānīds capture 498, 500
 Ya‘qub ibn al-Layth and 316, 494
- Zawīla 559
- Zayd ibn ‘Alī 254–5, 303
- Zaydiyya 206, 255, 260, 326–7, 424–6
 in Caspian region 336, 346, 347, 356, 483–4, 500
 historiography 418
 in Yemen 265, 327, 418, 421–2, 424–6; and Ṣulayhīs 426, 427, 428, 429
- Zaynab, wife of Muḥammad 186
- Zenobia, queen of Palmyra 77
- Zikrawayh (or Zikrōye) 337, 536–7
 sons of *see* Ḥusayn ibn Zikrawayh; Yaḥyā ibn Zikrawayh
- Zīnabī, *marzbān* of Rayy 452
- Zīrids
 in al-Andalus 620, 621
 in Ifrīqiya 574, 578–9, 618
- Ziyād ibn Abī Sufyān 665–6
- Ziyād ibn Abīhi 209, 440, 455, 464, 490

Index

- Ziyād ibn Šāliḥ 456, 457–8
 Ziyādat Allāh I, Aghlabid ruler 604, 606, 610
 Ziyādat Allāh III, Aghlabid ruler 330, 615
 Ziyādīs of Yemen 304, 421, 422, 424
 Ziyārīds of Jurjān 347, 501
 Zoroastrianism 130, 131–2
 in Arabia 161, 415, 439
 in Caspian region 479, 480
 conversions to Islam 465
 fire worship 46, 106–7, 114, 118–19, 143, 200
 historiography 460
 iconography 76, 106–7, 654, Pl. 16.3
 and Iranian identity 144
 Islamic aversion to dualism 113
 Mardāvīj ibn Ziyār attempts to restore 347, 361–2
 persecution, allegations of 460
 post-conquest 347, 361–2, 460, 464, 465, 686
 priests 99–100, 105, 116, 120, 128, 462
 Sasanian kings and 85, 114, 118–19, 126–7, 131, 143
 see also Mazdakism
 Zosimus 101
 Zubāla 157
 Zubayda, wife of Hārūn al-Rashīd 280–1, 282, 442
 al-Zubayr ibn al-ʿAwwām 169, 204, 216, 405
 Zubayrīds 405, 406–7
 Zuhayr ibn al-Musayyab 474
 Zuhra 157, 168
 al-Zuhrī, Ibn Shihāb 400, 525
zūnbīl of Sīstān and Zābulīstān 237–8, 485–6, 494
 Zurāra, Banū 155
 Zurayʿ, Banū 429
 Zutt peoples 249, 451